# This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations and is not a part of the Official Record

# **BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

## IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning documents will not correct images, please do not report the images to the Image Problem Mailbox.





11) Publication number: 0 679 642 A1

(12)

### **EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION**

(21) Application number: 95106189.4

22) Date of filing: 26.04.95

(a) Int. Cl.<sup>6</sup>: **C07D 217/14,** C07D 311/76, A61K 31/47, A61K 31/35, C07D 405/06, C07D 401/06, C07D 409/12

30 Priority: 28.04.94 JP 114054/94 28.04.94 JP 92769/94

(3) Date of publication of application: 02.11.95 Bulletin 95/44

(A) Designated Contracting States:

AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IE IT LI LU NL
PT SE

(1) Applicant: TAKEDA CHEMICAL INDUSTRIES, LTD. 1-1, Doshomachi 4-chome Chuo-ku, Osaka 541 (JP) (72) Inventor: Kato, Kaneyoshi
2-40, Maruyamadal 2-chome
Kawanishi, Hyogo 666-1 (JP)
Inventor: Sugiura, Yoshihiro
2-10-B-505, Tsurumai-nishimachi
Nara 631 (JP)
Inventor: Kato, Kolchi
7-9-704, Kasuga 1-chome, Tsukuba
ibakari 305 (JP)
Inventor: Nagal, Yasuo
11-29, Niina 1-chome
Minoo, Osaka 562 (JP)

Representative: von Kreisler, Alek,
Dipl.-Chem. et al
Patentanwälte,
von Kreisler-Selting-Werner,
Bahnhofsvorplatz 1 (Deichmannhaus)
D-50667 Köln (DE)

(54) Condensed heterocyclic compounds, their production and use.

(57) The compound

$$\begin{array}{c}
Ar (CH_2)a - N \\
(CH_3)n
\end{array}$$





(1) Publication number: 0 679 642 A1

12

### **EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION**

(21) Application number: 95106189.4

(22) Date of filing: 26.04.95

(5) Int. CI.\*: C07D 217/14, C07D 311/76, A61K 31/47, A61K 31/35, C07D 405/06, C07D 401/06, C07D 409/12

30 Priority: 28.04.94 JP 114054/94 28.04.94 JP 92769/94

(3) Date of publication of application: 02.11.95 Bulletin 95/44

(A) Designated Contracting States:
AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IE IT LI LU NL
PT SE

(7) Applicant: TAKEDA CHEI/ICAL INDUSTRIES, LTD.
1-1, Doshomachi 4-chome
Chuo-ku, Osaka 541 (JP)

72 Inventor: Kato, Kaneyoshi
2-40, Maruyamadai 2-chome
Kawanishi, Hyogo 666-1 (JP)
Inventor: Sugiura, Yoshihiro
2-10-B-505, Tsurumai-nishimachi
Nara 631 (JP)
Inventor: Kato, Kolchi
7-9-704, Kasuga 1-chome, Tsukuba
Ibakari 305 (JP)
Inventor: Nagai, Yasuo
11-29, Niina 1-chome
Minoo, Osaka 562 (JP)

Representative: von Kreisier, Alek,
Dipl.-Chem. et al
Patentanwälte,
von Kreisier-Seiting-Werner,
Bahnhofsvorplatz 1 (Deichmannhaus)
D-50667 Köln (DE)

(A) Condensed heterocyclic compounds, their production and use.

(57). The compound

wherein ring A represents a benzene ring; Ar represents an aromatic group; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> independently represent hydrogen, acyl or hydrocarbon group or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together with the adjacent nitrogen atom represent a integer of 1 to 6; no represents an integer of 2 to 3; represents a single bond or a double bond; X stands for O-

or -NR3- in which R3 represents hydrogen, acyl or hydrocarbon group where \_\_\_\_\_ is a singl bond or =N- where \_\_\_\_\_ is a double bond has excellent GnRH receptor antagonizing activity, calcium antagonizing and monoamine-uptake inhibiting activities and and value as a prophylactic/therapeutic drug for sex hormone-dependent diseases and for central diseases.

### **BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invinition relates to a novil condensed heterocyclic compounds which have excellent gonadotropinreleasing hormone (GnRH) receptor entagonizing activity, as will as processes for producing the compounds, pharmaceutical compositions containing the compound, and medical uses for the pharmaceutical compositions.

The compounds of this invention also have calcium-antagonizing and monoamine-uptake inhibiting activities and are therefore useful as a prophylactic/therapeutic drug for acute and chronic central nervous system disorders and CNS-related diseases, such as dysmnesia.

### **RELATED PRIOR ART**

Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) is a decapeptide consisting of 10 amino acids produced in the hypothalamus. It is known that this hormone regulates secretion of luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) through receptors which are considered to be present in the anterior lobe if the pituitary gland. GnRH thereby exhibits several physiological activities including induction of ovulation. Since an antagonist or agonist that is specific to such receptors is expected to regulate the hormonal activities of GnRH produced from the hypothalamus and control the secretion of anterior pituitary hormones (including LH or FSH which inhibits the secretion of estrogen in female or testosteron in male) the prophylactic or therapeutic ifficion anterior pituitary hormone-dependent diseases can be expected.

Since the discovery of gonadotropin-releasing hormone in 1971, a large number of its congeners have been synthesized in the expectation of agonistic or antagonistic activity. For example, leuprolerin acetate is a compound which has a higher affinity for GnRH receptors and is less easily metabolized than native GnRH.

Repeated administration of leuprolerin acetate, which is 20 to 50-fold as active as native GnRH, causes the so-called receptor down regulation to decrease the release and production of gonadotropin-releasing hormone in the pituitary gland and, for example, reduce the response of the testis to gonadotropin and accordingly reduce its testosterone-producing capacity to the castrated level or reduce estrogen-producing capacity in the ovary. It is known that the compound consequently shows an antitumor effect on hormone-dependent cancer, for example cancer of the prostate. In fact, leuprolerin acetate is in broad clinical use as a th rapeutic ag in for prostatic cancer, breast cancer and hystromyoma, as well as endometriosis, among other diseases.

However, these GnRH agonist are peptides which are poorly absorbed after oral administration and and therefore restricted in dosage form. Moreover, they develop agonistic activity transiently before the onset of efficacy following administration so that the steroidal sex hormone concentration in blood increases, sometimes cousing a transitory exacerbation such as ostealgia in some cases.

Accordingly, attempts are being made with the object of developing GnRH antagonists which provide ther apeutic efficacy, but which are free of the above-mentioned side effects.

As compounds having such GnRH antagonizing activity, there is a list of known compounds such as cyclic hexapeptide derivatives (USP 4,659,691) and bicyclic peptide derivatives (J. Med. Chem., <u>36</u>, 3265-3273, 1993), all of which have been developed with attention focused on the spatial configuration of GnRH. However, since these compounds are peptides, the perennial problems such as poor oral absorption and poor stability in the patient remain to be solved.

Meanwhile, synthesis of non-peptide compounds having GnRH receptor antagonizing activity has also been undertaken. USP 4,678,784 describes benzazepine compounds of the formula

55 [wherein R¹ represents an amino functional group of -NR3R4, 4-morpholino,

$$-N \xrightarrow{(CH_2)n} \quad \text{or} \quad -N \xrightarrow{NR^7}_{R^6}$$

R2 represents hydrogen, alkoxy, alkyl, trifluoro-methyl, halogen, nitro, hydroxy or dialkylamin

R³ and R⁴ independently represent hydrogen, alkyl, or alkyl substituted by hydroxyl, halogen or alkoxy; m is equal to 0 or 1;

n is equal to 0, 1 or 2;

10

15

20

55

R<sup>5</sup> represents hydroxyl, alkyl, halogen, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, or alkyl substituted by hydroxyl, halogen, alkoxy or phenyl; and

R<sup>6</sup> represents hydrogen, alkyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl or phenyl;

R7 represents hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, or alkyl substituted by hydroxyl, halogen, alkoxy, phenoxy or alkoxycarbonyl]. Journal of Medical Chemistry 32, 2036-2038, 1989 describes and mentions that compounds of the formula

wherein R represents

have LHRH (luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone) antagonizing activity.

Meanwhile, it is known that in cerebrovascular disorders or head injury, neuron-excitatory amin acids (among other factors) levate intracellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration. This levation of Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration caus a activation of Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent enzymes, which results in the over-excitment and consequent death of neurons,

leading to aggravation of symptoms.

For the treatment of these diseases and specifically for controlling an excessive elevation of intracellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, a variety of calcium channel block is represented by dihydropyridines have been imployed. However, these non-selective Ca<sup>2+</sup> channel blockers act peripherally on the heart, blood vessels, it as well as the central nervous system. Moreover, some of them, such as flunarizine, have extrapyramidal side effects.

Recently, in dementia accompanied by shedding of neurofilaments, for example in Alzheimer's disease, the role of abnormal intracellular calcium ion concentration in the mechanism of the cytotoxicity of the etiologic factor β-amyloid protein has been pointed out [Mark P. Mattson et al., Trends in NeuroScience, 16, 409]. Against the above background, it is now considered that a CNS-selective calcium ion antagonist would normalize the calcium ion homeostasis in the brain nerve cell and thereby show prophylactic and therapeutic efficacy for dementia.

WO92/06172 describes a piperidine derivative having CNS-selective calcium antagonistic activity. Meanwhile, USP 2,759,936 describes, as an anticonvulsant, a compound of the formula.

X-B Q

[wherein R represents C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyl; X represents C<sub>2-4</sub> alkylene; B represents di(lower)alkyl, piperidino, morpholino, pyrrolidino, N'-alkylpiperazino or pipecolino].

A compound of the formula

[wherein R¹ and R² independently represent hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl] is reported (USP 3,553,218), a compound of the formula

45 [wherein R¹ represents hydrogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or phenyl; R² represents

$$-A-N \left\langle \frac{R^4}{R^4} \right\rangle$$

(A represents alkylene;  $R^5$  and  $R^6$  independently represent alkyl or, taken together with the nitrogen atom, represent a 5- through 7-membered ring);  $R^3$  and  $R^4$  independently represent  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy] as a cardiovascular drug is reported (USP 4,118,494),

a compound of the formula

50

15

is reported (USP 4,650,884), and a compound of the formula

$$R_1 \longrightarrow 0$$

$$R_2$$

$$R_3$$

[wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  independently represent hydrogen, hydroxyl,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy, halogen,  $CF_3$  remethylenedioxy;  $R_4$  represents hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl; A represents a bond,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylene or alkylidene; where Y is a bond, B represents  $C_{1-6}$  alkylene or alkylidene; where Y is O, S or  $NR^5$ , B represents  $C_{2-6}$  alkylene; X represents CH or N;  $R_5$  represents hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl] as a therapeutic drug for angina pectoris and myocardial infarction which has intracellular calcium-antagonizing activity is reported (USP 5,238,939).

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention has for its object to provide a novel condensed heterocyclic compound (or salt thereof) having excellent gonadotropin-releasing hormone receptor antagonistic activity, calcium-antagonizing and/or monoamine-uptake inhibiting activities.

The inventors of this invention explored compounds having the following nuclear structures and discovere that compounds having both an aromatic group and a nitrogen-terminated alkyl group in the (3+n) position the above nuclear structure have excellent gonadotropin-releasing hormone receptor antagonistic, calcium antagonizing and monoamine-uptake inhibiting activities and exhibit minimal toxicity.

(n represents an integer of 1 to 3.)

This invention has been developed on the basis of the above finding.

### **DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

The present invention generally relates to: a compound of the formula

$$\begin{array}{c}
A^{r}(CH_{2})n-N \stackrel{R^{1}}{\nearrow} \\
(CH_{2})n
\end{array}$$
(1)

wherein ring Ar presents a benz ne ring which may be substitut d,

Ar represents an aromatic group which may be substituted,

R¹ and R² independently represent hydrog in atom, acyl group in hydrocarbon group (residui) which may bisubstitut dir R¹ and R² taken together with the adjacent nitrogen at im represent a nitrogin-containing heterocyclic group,

m represents an integer f 1 to 6,

n represents an integer of 1 to 3,

---- represents a single bond or a double bond,

X is -O- or -NR3- (R3 represents hydrogen atom, acyl group or hydrocarbon group which may b substituted) where ---- is a single bond, or X is =N- where ---- is a double bond, or a salt thereof.

As used in this specification, the term "benzene ring which may be substituted" means a benz ne ring which may be substituted by, for example, halogen, alkyl which may be halogenated, alkoxy which may be halogenated, alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono- or di(C<sub>1-e</sub>)alkylamino (e.g. methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, etc.), carboxy, C<sub>1-e</sub> alkoxycarbonyl (e.g. methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, Isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, tc.), C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino (e.g. formylamino, acetylamino, propionylamino, butyrylamino, benzoylamino, etc.) and methylenedioxy, among others. However, among the above-mentioned substituent groups, nitro, cyano and sulfo are excluded in the case of the "benzene ring which may be substituted" for the ring A. The substituent group may be present in any substitutable position on the benzene ring and may number 1 to 3. Moreover, where the number of substituents is at least 2, they may be the same or different.

The "aromatic group" of the term "aromatic group which may be substituted" as used throughout this specification includes aromatic hydrocarbon groups and heteroaromatic groups, among others.

The "aromatic hydrocarbon group" in this context is a monocyclic or condensed polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon group, including C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl groups such as phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, anthryl, etc. Phenyl is particularly preferred.

The "heteroaromatic group" in the above context is a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic heteroaromatic group having preferably 1-3 hetero-atoms of 1 or 2 kinds as selected from among nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur in addition to carbon as ring members, which may be fused to aromatic rings, such as a benzene ring, to form a bicyclic or tricyclic heteroaromatic group. Thus, 5-or 6-membered monocyclic heteroaromatic groups having 1-3 hetero-atoms selected from among nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur in addition to carbon as ring m mbers, such as 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-furyl, 3-furyl, 4-quinolyl, 8-quinolyl, 4-isoquinolyl, pyrazinyl, 2-pyrimidinyl, 3-pyrrolyl, 2-imidazolyl, 3-pyridazinyl, 3-isothiazolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-isoindolyl, etc., and bicyclic heteroaromatic groups formed as one benze he ring is fused to the respective monocyclic groups can be m nationed, among others.

Particularly, 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic groups having 1-3 hetero-atoms selected from among nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur in addition to carbon as ring members (e.g. 2-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, etc.) are pref rred.

The substituent groups that may be possessed by the "aromatic group" are similar to those mentioned for the "benzene ring which may be substituted".

The substituent group may be present in any substitutable position on the heteroaromatic group and may number 1 through 3. When the number of substituents is at least 2, they may be the same or different.

The "hydrocarbon group" of the term "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" as used throughout this specification means any of the groups listed below under (1) or (2), among others.

- (1) acyclic hydrocarbon groups:
  - a) C1-6 alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.)
  - b) C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl (e.g. vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, etc.)
  - c) C<sub>2-6</sub> alkinyl (e.g. propargyl, ethinyl, butinyl, 1-hexinyl, etc.)
- (2) Cyclic hydrocarbon groups:
  - a)  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.); cyclohexyl may be fus d to a benzene ring which may be substituted by  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl or  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy
  - b) C<sub>8-14</sub> aryl (e.g. phenyl, tolyl, xylyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-indenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.); phenyl is preferred
  - c) C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl (e.g. benzyl, phenethyl, diphenylmethyl, triphenylmethyl, 1-naphthylmethyl, 2-naphthylmethyl, 2-diphenylethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, 4-phenylbutyl, 5-phenylpentyl, etc.); benzyl is preferred

The substituent groups which may be possessed by the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" are x, thioxo, ph. nyl, phenylamino, phenyloxy and methylenedic xyphenyloxy group, in addition to similar to those menticle ned for the "benzene ring which may be substituted".

The substituent group may be present in any substitutable position on the hydrocarbon group and may

number 1 t 3. Wh re the number of substituents is n t less than 2, th y may be the same or different.

The term "acyl" as used throughout this specification means, among others, -CO-R, -CONH-R, -SO<sub>2</sub>-R r-CO-OR wherein R represents a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted.

The "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for R can be any of those groups mentioned hereinbef re. For example, formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, valeryl, acryloyl, propiolyl, benzoyl, nicotinoyl, methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, benzen sulf myl and teluenesulfonyl, can be mentioned as acyl group.

The term "halogen" is typically used in this specification to mean fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine. Fluorine and chlorine are preferred.

Preferably, ring A is a benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from th group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-\delta}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-\delta}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-\delta}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-\delta}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-\delta}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino; and

Ar is preferably (i) a  $C_{8-14}$  aryl (most preferably, benzene) or (ii) 5- or 6-membered heteroaromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino.

The hydrocarbon group which may be substituted is preferably a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkinyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl group which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino; and

the nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group is preferably (i) a 5- or 6-membered nitrogen-containing hetero-aromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated, oxygen and oxygen atom, oxyg

(ii)

30

35

$$-N \stackrel{(CH_2)p}{\longrightarrow}$$

wherein ring B may be substituted by two oxo groups and may be fused to one benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the groups consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, p represents an integer of 4 to 7.

-N

wherein Z represents -O-, >CH-W or >N-W (W represents (a) hydrogen atom or (b) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl group, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthlowhich may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylaminol, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylaminol, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino, or (iv)

wherein ring D represents (a) a benzene ring or (b) 5-or 6-membered heteroaromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogon, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

Y represents -CH2-, -CO- or -CH(OH)-, s and t each represents an integer of 1 to 3.

15

30

Ar is also preferably a phenyl group which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino;

Other preferred embodiments are when: R1 represents hydrogen atom and R2 represents a C7-16 aralkyl which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, Ci-e alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxy. bonyl and C1-7 acylamino; or

R1 and R2 taken together with the adjacent nitrogen atom form

wherein ring Da represents a benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-8</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxycarbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino, Ye represents -CH<sub>2</sub>- or -CO-;

Also preferred are those compounds in which:

---- represents a single bond and X represents -O-; or

- represents a single bond and X represents -NR3a.

in which  $R^{3\alpha}$  represents hydrogen atom or  $C_{1-\alpha}$  alkyl group;

Other preferred embodiments are when: ring A is a benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C1-6 alkylthic which may be halogenated, hydroxy, amino,

mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxyl C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino and methylenedioxy

the hydrocarbon group which may be substituted is a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkinyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl group which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy. C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino, oxo, thioxo, phenyl, phenylamino, phenyloxy and methylenedioxyph nyloxy; r

the nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group is

(i) a 5- or 6-membered nitrogen-containing hetero-aromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from

المرابطة والمتاريخ والمتارك والمنافق والمنافظة المرابي والمتاريخ والمرابع والمارات

10

15

20

25

30

45

50

(v)

nitrog n, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substitut d with 1 to 3 substituents sel cted from the group consisting of hal gen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may b halog nated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthi which may b halogenated, nitro, cyan , sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino,  $di(C_{1-6})$ alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alk xycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

$$-N \stackrel{(CH_2)p}{=}$$

wherein ring B may be substituted by 1 or 2 oxo groups and may be fused to one benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the groups consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, p represents an integer of 4 to 7.

$$-N$$
Z

wherein Z represents -O-, >CH-W or >N-W (W represents (a) hydrogen atom, (b) a C<sub>8-14</sub> aryl or C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl group, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino or (c) a heterocyclic group which may be substituted), (iv)

wherein ring D represents (a) a benzene ring or (b) a 5- or 6-membered heteroaromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituted ents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alk xy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

Y represents -CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CO- or -CH(OH)-, s and t each represents an integer of 1 to 3, or

wherein ring Db represents a benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C1-6 alkyl which may be halog nated, C1-6 alkoxy which may be hatogenated, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyithio which may b halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amin  $mono(C_{1-6})$ alkylamino, di $(C_{1-6})$ alkylamin , carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alk xycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>--CO- or -CH(OH)-.

These compounds and others according to the formula

10

20

30

35

40

45

55

$$\begin{array}{c}
Ar \\
(CH_2)m - N < R^1 \\
(CH_2)n
\end{array}$$

wherein all the symbols are as defined above or a salt thereof, may be produced by reacting a compound of 15 the formula

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & \text{Ar} & (\text{CH}_2)_m - L \\
\hline
\text{(CH}_2)_n & \\
\hline
\end{array}$$

wherein L represents a leaving group and the other symbols are as defined above, or a salt thereof, with a compound of the formula 25

$$HN < R^1$$

wherein the symbols are as defined above, or a salt thereof. These compounds and others according to the formula

$$\begin{array}{c}
Ar \\
(CH_2)m - N \\
(CH_2)n
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^1 \\
(CH_2)n
\end{array}$$

wherein all the symbols are as defined above, or a salt thereof, may be produced by subjecting a compound of the formula

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & \text{Ar} \\
\hline
 & \text{CH}_2)_m - N < R^1 \\
\hline
 & \text{CH}_2)_n - N - \text{CHO}
\end{array}$$

wherein all the symbols are as defined above, or a salt thereof, to cyclization.

The term "alkyl which may be halogenated" as used in this specification means any of C1-6 alkyl groups substituted by 1-3 halogen atoms ( .g. fluorine, chlorine, iodine, etc.) (for example, methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, pro

pyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluoroh xyl, etc.). Among others, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl groups opti nally substituted by 1-3 halogen atoms (e.g. fluorin , chlorine, bromine, etc.) (for example, methyl, chloromethyl, difluorom thyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, isobutyl, secbutyl, tert-butyl, etc.) are preferable.

The term "alkoxy which may be halogenated" is used in this specification to mean any of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy groups optionally substituted by 1-3 "halogen atoms" similar to those mentioned above, such as methoxy, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, ethoxy, 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, 4,4,4-trifluorobutoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc. Among others, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy groups optionally substitut d by 1-3 "halogen atoms" similar to those mentioned above, such as methoxy, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, etchoxy, 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, 4,4,4-trifluorobutoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, etc.

The term "alkylthio which may be halogenated" is used in this specification to mean any of  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio groups optionally substituted by 1-3 "halogen atoms" similar to those mentioned above, such as methylthio, diffluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, 4,4,4-trifluorobutylthio, pentylthio, hexylthio, etc., and preferably  $C_{1-4}$  alkylthio groups optionally substituted by 1-3 "halogen atoms" similar to those mentioned above, such as methylthio, diffluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, 4,4,4-trifluorobutylthio and so on.

The phrase "which may be halogenated" as used in this specification is equivalent to "which may be substituted by 1-3 halogen atoms (e.g. fluorine, chlorine, bromine, etc.)".

The "heterocyclic group" of the term "heterocyclic group which may be substituted" as us d throughout this specification include a 5- to 11-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atom in addition to carbon atoms. Such groups include a 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-furyl, 3-furyl, 2-quinolyl, 4-quinolyl, 8-quinolyl, 3-isoquinolyl, 4-isoquinolyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-pyridyl, 1-imidazolyl, 2-imidazolyl, 1-pyrazolyl, 2-thiazolyl, 4-thiazolyl, 5-thiazolyl, 3-isothiazolyl, 4-isothiazolyl, 3-isoxazolyl, 3-pyridazinyl, 1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2-pyridon-1-yl, 3-pyridion-1-yl, 1-imidazolidinyl, 2-imidazolidinyl, 3-imidazolidinyl, piperidingl, 3-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2-pyridion-1-yl, 1-imidazolidinyl, 2-imidazolidinyl, 2-imidazolidinyl, 2-pyrrolidinyl, 2-pyridinyl, 3-pyrrolidinyl, 3-py

The substituent groups which may be possessed by the "heterocyclic group" are similar to those mentioned for the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted".

The substituent group may be present in any substitutable position on the heterocyclic group and may number 1 to 3. Where the number of substituents is at least 2, they may be the same or different.

The term "nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group" is used throughout this specification to m an any of the following groups, among others.

(i) 5- or 6-membered nitrogen-containing hetero-aromatic groups having 1-3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur in addition to carbon as ring members, such as

and so on. (ii)

55

$$-N \stackrel{\text{(CH2)p}}{=}$$

wherein ring B may be substituted by 1 or 2 oxo groups and/or be fused to one benzene ring which may be substituted; p represents an integer of 4 to 7; the "benzene ring which may be substituted" mentioned just above is as defined hereinbefore. Among others, preferred are

and so on.

In the above formulae, G represents halogen (e.g. fluorine, chlorine, etc.), C1-e alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, etc.), or  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy (e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, isopropoxy), etc., for instance.

10

20

25

30

35

$$-N$$

In the above formula, Z represents oxygen, >CH-W or >N-W, wherein W represents (a) hydrogen, (b) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl (e.g. phenyl) or C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl (e.g. benzyl) group which may be substituted or (c) heterocyclic group which may be substituted. The substituent groups which may be possessed by the "C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl", "C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl" or "heterocyclic group" are similar to those mentioned for the "benzene ring which may be substituted".

Preferred are

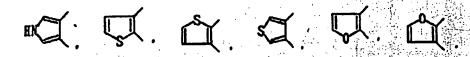
and so on.

In the above formulas, G is as defined hereinbefore.

(iv)

wherein ring D represents an aromatic ring which may be substituted, Y represents -CH2-, -CO--CH(OH)-, s and t each represents an integer of 1 to 3.

The "aromatic ring" for the ring D is (a) a benzene ring or (b) 5- or 6-membered heteroaromatic ring having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur in addition to carbon as ring members, such as the following, among others.



The substituent groups which may be possessed by the "aromatic ring" are similar to those mentioned for the "benzene ring which may be substituted".

Preferably,

-N ya

wherein ring D\* represents a benzene ring which may be substituted; Y\* represents -CH<sub>2</sub> or -CO-, among others, is used.

A still more preferred example is

15

25

30

35

wherein G is as defined hereinbefore.

In the following disclosure in this specification, (i) the halogen may for example be fluorine or chlorine; (ii)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated may for example be methyl, ethyl, isopropyl or trifluoromethyl; (iii)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl may for example be methyl, ethyl or isopropyl; (iv)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated may for example be methoxy, isopropoxy or trifluoromethoxy; (v)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy may for example be methoxy, thoxy or isopropoxy; (vi)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated may for example be methylthio, ethylthio or isopropylthio; (vii) mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino may for example be methylamino or ethylamino; (viii) di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino may for example be dimethylamino or diethylamino; (ix)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl may for example be methoxycarbonyl ethoxycarbonyl or isopropoxycarbonyl; and (x)  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino may for example be formylamino, acetylamino or propionylamino.

In the above formula, ring A represents a benzene ring which may be substituted.

Preferred is a benzene ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from hatoger.  $C_{1-6}$  alkoy, among others. More preferred is an unsubstituted benzene ring.

In the above formula, Ar represents an aromatic group which may be substituted.

Preferred is a phenyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from halogen atom  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be he logenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono  $(C_{1-6})$  alkylamino, di $(C_{1-6})$  alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy ycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino.

Still mor preferred is a phenyl group which may be substituted by one halogen atom. Specially, and substituted phenyl group is preferred.

Referring, further, to the above formula, R1 and R2 independently represent hydrogen atom, acyl group

a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted; or R¹ and R² taken together with the adjacent nitrogen atom form a nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group.

The preferred combination of R¹ and R², where they do not form a ring, is as follows: R¹ is hydrogen and R² is  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl ( .g. benzyl, phenethyl, tc.) which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from aming halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, or cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino.

The still more preferred combination is that  $R^1$  is hydrogen and  $R^2$  is  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl (e.g. benzyl, phen thyl, etc.) which may be substituted by one substituent group selected from halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy and  $C_{1-6}$  alkexycarbonyl.

The preferred examples of the ring which may be formed by R¹ and R² taken together with the adjacent nitrogen atom are as follows.

(1)

10

15

25

35

50

-N

wherein Z represents oxygen, >CH-W or >N-W in which W represents (a) hydrogen or (b) a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl ( .g. phenyl) or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl (e.g. benzyl) group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, or

wherein ring D represents (a) a benzene ring or (b) 5-or 6-membered heteroaromatic ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur in addition to carbon as ring members (e.g. thiophene, pyridine, etc.) which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, Y represents -  $CH_{2^{-1}}$ -CO- or -CH(OH)-, s and t each represents an integer of 1 to 3.

The more preferred examples are (1)

wherein W represents a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl (e.g. phenyl) or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl (e.g. benzyl) group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, and (2)

wherein ring De represents a benzene ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups sell cted from among halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C1-6)-alkylamino, di(C1-6)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxycarbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino, Y<sup>a</sup> represents -CH<sub>2</sub>- or -CO-.

In the above formulae, m represents an integer of 1 to 6 and is preferably is 3.

Further in the above formulae, n represents an integer of 1 to 3 and is preferable is 1.

In the above formulae, \_\_\_\_ represents a single bond or a double bond.

Where X in the above formulae stands for -O- or -NR3- wherein R3 is hydrogen, acyl or hydrocarbon group which may be substituted where \_\_\_\_ is a single bond, and X stands for =N- where \_\_\_\_ is a double bond.

The "acyl" and "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for R3 are both as defined hereinbefore. R3 is preferably hydrogen or a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group.

Preferably, in the above formula, \_\_\_\_ represents a single bond and X represents -O-.

It is also preferable that, in the above formulae, ---- represents a single bond and X represents -NR34 wherein R3a is hydrogen or C1-6 alkyl.

The preferred compounds of this invention are:

### (1) compounds of the following formula

wherein ring A represents a benzene ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthi which may be halogenated, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxycarbonyl and C1-7 acylamino,

Are represents phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from halogen.  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthic which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkoxycarbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino,

W represents a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl (e.g. phenyl) or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl (e.g. benzyl) group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from halogen,  $C_{1-8}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-8}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated, C1-6 alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino,  $mono(C_{1-6})$ alkylamino, di $(C_{1-6})$ alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

m represents an integer of 1 to 6,

--- represents a single bond.

Xª stands for -O- or -NR3a- wherein R3a is hydrogen or C1-6 alkyl, or a sait thereof

### (2) Compounds of the formula

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & Ar^{a} \\ \hline (CH_{2})m - N \\ \hline & D^{\overline{a}} \end{array}$$

wherein ring A represents a benzen ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups selected from hall gen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarb nyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

Are represents phenyl which may be substituted by 1 t 3 substituent groups s lected from halog n,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may b halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alk xy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

ring D<sup>a</sup> represents a benzene ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituent groups select d from halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

Y° represents -CH<sub>2</sub>- or -CO-, m represents an integer of 1 to 6, ---- represents a single bond,

15

20

Xº stands for -O- or -NR3º- wherein R3º is hydrogen or C1-6 alkyl, or a salt thereof.

The following is a partial listing of preferred species of the compound of this invention. These compounds have excellent GnRH receptor antagonizing activity.

- (1) N,N-Diphenyl-(3-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]amino)propionamide hydrochloride;
- (2) N-(2-Phenoxyethyl)-3-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propylaminomethyl]benzamide hydrochloride;
- (3) 3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperi-dine] hydrochloride;
- (4) Methyl 3-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propylaminomethyl]benzoate hydrochloride;
- 25 (5) 4-[3-(3-Methylbenzylamino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride;
  - (6) 3,4-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[benzo[b]thiophen-5(4H)-4-one,2'-piperidine] hydrochloride;
  - (7) 3,4-Dihydro-6-methoxy-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-(yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalen-2(1H)-1-one,2'-pi-peridine] hydrochloride;
- 30 (8) 3.4-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalen-2(1H)-1-one,2'-piperidine], hydrochloride:
  - (9) 3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-1'-[3-(4-[fluurophenyl]isochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride;
  - (10) 4-[3-(1,2,3,4-Tetrahydronaphthalen-1-yl)amino propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride;
- 35 (11) 3,4-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-[phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydro-chloride
  - (12) 4-(3-Phenethylaminopropyl)-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride;
  - (13) 3,4-Dihydro-6-methoxy-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride; and
  - (14) 3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-1'-[4-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)butyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride.

Furthermore, the following is a partial listing of the preferred compounds, which have excellent calcium antagonizing or monoamine-uptake inhibiting activities of this invention.

- (1) 3,4-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochlor-ide.
- (2) 3,4-Dihydro-1'-[2-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)ethyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochlor-ide.
- (3) 4-[2-(4-Benzylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl]-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride,
- (4) 4-{3-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride,
- 50 (5) 4-[3-Benzylamino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride,
  - (6) 3,4-Dihydro-6-methoxy-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride,
  - (7) 4-[3-(4-Phenylpiperidino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride,
  - (8) 4-[3-(β-Phenethylamino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride,
- 55 (9) 4-[3-(o-Fluorobenzylamino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride,
  - (10) 4-[3-(o-Chlorobenzylamino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride,
  - (11) 4-[3-(3,4-Dim thoxyphenethylamino)propyl]-4-phenyllsochroman hydrochloride,
  - (12) 4-[3-(2-Picolylamino)propyl]-4-ph nylisochroman dihydrochloride,

(13) 4-[3-(1-Hexamethyleneimino)propyl]-4-ph nylisochroman hydrochlorid

15

25

- (14) 4-(p-Chl rophenyl)-3,4-dihydro-4-[3-(4-ph nylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]is quinoline trihydrochl ride,
- (15) 3,4-Dihydro-4-ph nyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]is quinolin dihydrochloride,
- (16) 4-[3-(N-B nzyl-N-methyl)aminopropyl]-3,4-dihydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride,
- (17) 4-(3-[4-(p-Fluoroph nyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-phenyl-isoquinolin dihydro chloride,
- (18) 4-[3-(N-Benzyl-N-methyl)aminopropyl]-4-phenyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline dihydrochloride,
- (19) 1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline tri-hydrochloride,
- (20) 1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-phenyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]isoquinoline trihydrochloride.
  - (21) 1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-{2-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperidino]ethyl}-2-(3-methoxyphenylaminocarbonyl)-4-phenylisoquinoline,
  - (22) 4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-2-methyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperidino)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline dihydrochloride, and
  - (23) 4-[3-(N-Benzyl-N-methylamino)propyl]-4-phenyl-2-phenylcarbamoyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquin line hydrochloride.

The preferred salts of compound (I) of this invention include medicinally acceptable acid addition salts. Among such salts are salts with inorganic acids, such as hydrochloride, hydrobromide, hydrolodid, sulfate, phosphate, etc., and salts with organic acids, such as acetate, oxalate, succinate, ascorbate, maleate, lactate, citrate, tartrate, methanesulfonate, benzoate and so on.

Among species of the compound of this invention are optically active compounds and, of cours, the respective isomers available on optical resolution fall within the scope of this invention.

Such optical isomers can be obtained by the per se known technology, e.g. by using an optically active synthetic intermediate or subjecting the final racemic compound to optical resolution in the conventional manner.

The technology that can be used for the optical resolution includes a method which comprises preparing a salt with an optically active acid and separating the salt by fractional recrystallization; a method which comprises subjecting the racemic compound or salt to chromatography using a optically active column (chiral column), for example ENANTIO-OVM (Toso), and eluting the desired isomer with a solvent or solvents silected from among water, various buffer solutions (e.g. phosphate buffer), and organic solvents such as alcoholic solvents (e.g. methanol, etc.), nitrile solvents (e.g. acetonitrile), hexane, ethyl ether, etc.; and a method which comprises causing the racemic mixture to condense with an optically active organic acid, for xample MPTA [α-methoxy-α-(trifluoro methyl)phenylacetic acid] or menthoxyacetic acid by a conventional to chnique such as the acid chloride process to provide a mixture of diastereomers of the amide, fractionating it by a fractional purification technique such as fractional recrystallization or silica gel chromatography, and subjecting it to acid or basic hydrolysis.

While the compound (I) or salt of this invention can be produced by various alternative processes, the processes described hereinafter can be mentioned as typical examples.

The compound (I) of this invention, where it is a free compound, can be converted to a salt by a conventional technique and, where it is a salt, can be converted to the free compound by a conventional technique. The compound (I) or salt thus produced can be isolated and purified by known procedures such as solvent xtraction, pH adjustment, redistribution, crystallization, recrystallization and chromatography. Where the compound (I) or salt is optically active, the isomers can be fractionally isolated by the optical resolution techniques described hereinbefore.

The "leaving group" for L is a functional group which is easily displaced by chemical reaction, thus including but being not limited to halogen, methanesulfonyloxy, p-toluenesulfonyloxy, benzenesulfonyloxy and trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy.

The specific solvents that can be used for the above reactions are as follows.

The "ether solvent" includes tetrahydrofuran, ethyl ether, dioxane, isopropyl ether, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and so on:

The "halogenated hydrocarbon solvent" includes dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride and so on.

The "aromatic hydrocarbon solvent" includes benzene, toluene, xylene and so on.

The "alcoholic solvent" includes methanol, ethanol, isopropyl alcohol, tert-butanol, ethylene glycol, secbutanol and so on.

<Production process 1> Synth sis of an isochroman-f rm derivative

The compound (I) wherein X is an oxygen at m can b synth siz d by th following process.

5 [Step 1] Synth sis of diol derivative (5) (cf. the fl w chart of the production process 1 her inafter)

A substituted phenylacetonitril derivative (1) is reacted with an acrylic ester (e.g. methyl acrylate or ethyl acrylate) or

wherein L represents a leaving group; J represents lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkyl, such as methyl or ethyl, in an inert s lv nt or mixed solvent, e.g. an ether solvent, N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), acetonitrile, an alcoholic solvent and/or an aromatic hydrocarbon solvent in the presence of a base at -20°C to 120°C for 5 minutes to 18 hours to provide an ester derivative (2).

The base that can be used includes strong bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium t-butoxide, lithium diisopropylamide, etc., inorganic bases such as alkali metal or alkaline earch metal hydroxides, carbonat s or bicarbonates, e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium carbonate, etc., and organic bases such as triethylamine, DBU (1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]-7-undecene) and so on.

Particularly in the reaction with an acrylic ester, the objective derivative can be produced by conducting the reaction with 1 to 5 equivalents of the acrylic ester in an alcohol, e.g. ethanol, in the presence of a catalyst amount to 5 equivalents of DBU under heating at 40°C to 100°C and stirring for 1 to 3 hours.

Where a bromoacetic ester is used, the objective derivative can be produced by conducting the reaction in an ether solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran (THF) in the presence of 1 to 3 equivalents of a strong base, e.g. sodium hydride, at 0°C to 20°C for 5 minutes to 20 hours.

The ester derivative (2) can be converted to the diol compound by a combination of reduction and acid hydrolysis. Thus, using not less than 3 equivalents of a metal hydride (e.g. lithium aluminum hydride, diisobutylaluminum hydride, diborane, etc.) in a solvent, such as an ether solvent (e.g. THF, ethyl ether, etc.) or an aromatic hydrocarbon solvent (e.g. toluene), the ester residue is reduced to hydroxymethyl and, at the same time, the cyano group is reduced to iminoalcohol (3). When lithium aluminum hydride, for instance, is emply d, the reaction temperature is preferably 0°C to 20°C and the reaction time 0.5 to 2 hours.

The resulting iminoalcohol (3) is subjected, without purification, to acid hydrolysis and further to reduction, whereby it is converted to the diol (5). The acid hydrolysis of iminoalcohol (3) can be accomplished by heating and stirring the imminoalcohol in a solvent mixture of water and either an inorganic acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid or the like, or an organic acid such as acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid or the like at 20°C to 100°C for 30 minutes to 25 hours. Preferably, (3) is treated in 2N-hydrochloric acid under heating at 50°C and stirring for 5 to 24 hours.

The reduction reaction mentioned above can be the ordinary reduction reaction using a metal hydride which is preferably lithium aluminum hydride or sodium borohydride. In the case of lithium aluminum hydride, the reaction is carried out in an ether solvent at 0°C to 30°C for 30 minutes to 2 hours.

On the other hand, the diol compound can also be obtained with ease by reducing the  $\gamma$ -butyrolactone compound (6) with, for example, a metal hydride. This reduction can be accomplished by the technique described in detail by Richard C. Larock's Comprehensive Organic Transformation.

Taking  $\alpha,\alpha$ -diphenyl- $\gamma$ -lactone (m=2) as an example, the corresponding diol compound (5) can be obtained in good yield by treating the lactone with 2 to 10 equivalents of lithium aluminum hydride in an ether solvent (e.g. THF, ethyl ether) at -20°C to 50 °C for 0.5 to 5 hours.

### [Step 2] Construction of the isochroman nucleus

Cyclization of the diol (5) can be achieved by using formalin or a formaldehyde polymer, e.g. paraformal-dehyde, in the presence of an organic acid, e.g. trifluoroacetic acid or methanesulfonic acid, or an inorganic acid, e.g. sulfuric acid, optionally in an inert solvent such as a halogenated hydrocarbon solvent (e.g. dichloromethane, dichloroethane, etc.) and conducting the reaction at 10°C to 100°C for 10 minutes to 18 hours. Th formaldehyde polymer may be used in excess and is preferably used in a proportion of 1 to 10 equivalents.

[Step 3] Introduction of

$$-N\langle_{\mathbb{R}^2}^{\mathbb{R}^1}\rangle$$

The hydroxyll group of isochroman derivative (7) can be easily converted to a leaving group [Compound (8)]. The preferred leaving group is tosyloxy or halogen, e.g. bromine, lodine or the like. This conversion reaction can be carried out by the perse known technique (e.g. the techniques described in Comprehensiv Organic Transformation referred to above). For example, the conversion to tosyloxy can be achieved by reacting (7) with p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (1 to 2 equivalents) in the presence of an organic base (1 to 5 equival nts), e.g. triethylamine, in a halogenated hydrocarbon solvent (e.g. dichloroethane, dichloromethane, etc.) at 0°C to 30°C. The lodo-compound can be obtained by reacting the tosyl compound with sodium lodide (1 to 5 equivalents) in an inert solvent. Preferably the reaction temperature is 10°C to 60°C and the reaction time is 10 minutes to 5 hours. The particularly preferred inert solvent is acetone, methyl ethyl ketone or the like.

The objective compound of this invention can be synthesized by using the corresponding amin

$$(HN(\frac{R^{1}}{R^{2}}))$$

and conducting the reaction in the absence or presence of an inert solvent (e.g. acetonitrile, DMF, acetone or an alcoholic solvent) at 10°C to 100°C for 1 to 24 hours. The preferred proportion of HN-R¹R² is 1 to 3 equivalents and this reaction can be conducted smoothly in the presence of an inorganic base, e.g. potassium carbonate, or an organic amine, e.g. triethylamine. While the type and amount of the base may vary with different amines, the base is preferably used in a proportion of 2 to 4 equivalents.

Production process 1

20

25

30

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & A \\
\hline
 & CN
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & CH = NH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & CH = NH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 & Ar \\
 & CH = NH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
 & Ar \\
 & R^2
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
 & R^2
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
 & R^2
\end{array}$$

<Production process 2> Synthesis of an isoquinolineform derivative

The compound in which X represents -NR3- or a nitrogen atom can be synthesized by the following process.

[Step 4] Synthesis of aminoalcohol (10)

10

15

20

25

30

35

55

The aminoalcohol (10) can be obtained by subjecting the cyano ester (2) obtained in the cours of Step 1 to direct reduction or the iminoalcohol (3) to reduction reaction.

In the process for direct reduction of cyano ester (2), the cyano ester derivative (2) is treated with not less than 4 equivalents of a metal hydride (e.g. lithium aluminum hydride, diisobutylaluminum hydride, diborane, sodium borohydride, etc.), optionally in the presence of aluminum chloride, cobalt chloride or the like, in an ether solvent (e.g. THF, ethyl ether, etc.) or an aromatic hydrocarbon solvent (e.g. toluene). When lithium aluminum hydride (4 to 10 equivalents) is used, the reaction temperature is preferably 20°C to 80°C and the reaction time is preferably 0.5 to 12 hours.

The same reaction conditions can be applied to the reduction of iminoalcohol (10).

[Step 5] Formylation of the amino group and introduction of

$$-N < \frac{R^1}{R^2}$$

The amino group of the aminoalcohol (10, is selectively formylated by treating (10) with a formic acid-lower fatty acid anhydride system and subsequent basification to obtain compound (11). This formylation reaction proceeds easily as the starting compound (10) is dissolved in an excess (3 to 10 equivalents) of formic acid and 1 to 1.5 equivalents of a fatty acid anhydride and stirred at 0°C to 30°C for 1 to 24 hours. In the subsequent basification step, the product is dissolved in an alcoholic solvent and stirred together with, for example, an alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxide (1 to 5 equivalents) at 0°C to 40°C for 30 minutes to 5 hours. This procedure gives the formamide (11).

The conversion of hydroxyll to a leaving group and the introduction of

$$-N <_{\mathbb{R}^2}^{\mathbb{R}^1 - 1}$$

can be carried out as described in Step 3.

[Step 6] Formation of the insoquinolene ring

Formation of the isoquinoline ring can be accompolished by acid catalysis reaction. While a vari ty of acid catalysts can be used, polyphosphoric acid is particularly preferred.

Thus, the formamide (13) and an excess (5 to 100 equivalents) of polyphosphoric acid are heated together at 100°C to 200°C with stirring for 1 to 5 hours, whereby the dihydroisoquinoline compound (14) is obtained.

The conversion to the tetrahydroisoquinoline compound (15) can be achieved by the <u>per se</u> known reduction reaction (e.g. the process using a metal hydride or the catalytic reduction using a metal catalyst).

The reduction reaction using a metal hydride can be achieved by stirring the starting compound together with lithium aluminum hydride, sodium borohydride, diborane, lithium borohydride or the like (1 - 10 equivalents) in an alcoholic solvent or an ether solvent at -20°C to 40°C for 5 minutes to 5 hours.

Where a catalytic reduction process using a metal catalyst is adopted, the reduction can be conducted using Ran y nickel, platinum xide, palladium metal, palladium-on-carbon or the like in an alconolic selvent or an the reduction to 100°C and a hydrogen pressure of not less than 1 atmesphere for 1 temperature 100°C and 100°C

[Step 7]

Introduction of substituent group R<sup>3</sup> to the ring nitrogen atom of tetrahydroisoquinoline derivative (15) can be achieved by the per se known methods.

The introduction of an alkyl group, for instance, can be achieved by using an alkyl halide or by r ductiv alkylation using an alkylaldehyde.

Taking reductive alkylation as an example, the reaction can be accomplished by using an excess (1 to 10 equivalents) of formalin or an alkylaldehyde (1 to 10 equivalents) in an alcoholic solvent in the presence of Raney nickel, platinum oxide, palladium metal, palladium-on-carbon or the like at 10°C to 100°C and a hydrogen pressure of not less than 1 atmosphere for 1 to 18 hours. The preferred range of hydrogen pressure is 1 to 10 atmospheres.

Referring to the reaction with an alkyl halide, the alkyl compound can be synthesized using an alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxide, carbonate or bicarbonate (e.g. potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.) or a strong base (e.g. sodium hydride, lithium hydride, etc.) in acetonitrile, DMF and/or an ether solvent at a temperature of 10 to 100°C for 1 to 100 hours.

In the case of acylation or carbamoylation, the reaction with the corresponding isocyanate or acyl chlorid is conducted in a halogenated hydrocarbon solvent (e.g. dichlomethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, etc.) at a reaction temperature of -20°C to 50°C for 5 minutes to 24 hours. This reaction may be conducted in the presence of an organic base, e.g. triethylamine, or an inorganic base, e.g. an alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxide, carbonate or bicarbonate (e.g. potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.) (a catalyst amount to 10 equivalents).

For the functional transformation or modification of

$$-N\langle {R^1} \rangle$$

various per se known reactions such as oxidation, reduction, alkylation and acylation can be carried ut in combination to provide other derivatives.

<Pre><Pre>roduction process 2>

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & \text{Ar} \\
 & \text{CH}_{2} \\
 & \text{CH}_{2} \\
 & \text{OH}_{2}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & \text{Ar} \\
 & \text{CH}_{2} \\
 & \text{NH}_{2}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & \text{Ar} \\
 & \text{CH}_{2} \\
 & \text{NH}_{2}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & CH_2NHCHO
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & 12
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & CH_2 \text{NHCHO}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & R^2
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & R^2
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & Ar \\
\hline
 & R^2
\end{array}$$

15

20

25

The various starting compounds and salts for the objective compound (1) of this invention can be r spectively isolated and purified by known procedures such as solvent extraction, pH adjustment, redistribution, salting-out, crystallization, recrystallization and chromatography but each reaction mixture containing the corresponding compound or salt may be directly submitted to the next reaction step.

In the respective reactions according to the invention and the respective reactions for synthesizing th starting or intermediate compounds, where any of such compounds has an amino, carboxyl and/or hydroxy group, such groups may be previously protected with an appropriate protective group that is commonly used in peptide or other chemistry and the objective compound can be ultimately obtained by removing the protective group as required.

The protective group that can be used for protection of the amino group includes but is not limited to  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl (e.g. formyl, acetyl, ethylcarbonyl, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkyloxycabonyl (e.g. methoxycarbonyl, etc.), benzoyl,  $C_{7-10}$  arakyl-carbonyl (e.g. benzylcarbonyl etc.), trityl, phthaloyl and, N,N-dimethylaminomethylene. These groups may respectively have 1 - 3 substituents, e.g. halogen (e.g. fluorine, chlorine, bromine, icdine), and nitro.

The protective group that can be used for protection of the carboxyl function includes but is not limited to  $C_{1-8}$  alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, etc.), phenyl, trityl and silyl. These groups may respectively have 1-3 substituent groups such as halogen (e.g. fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine),  $C_{1-8}$  alkyl-carbonyl (e.g. formyl, acetyl, ethylcarbonyl, butylcarbonyl, etc.) and nitro.

The protective group that can be used for protection of the hydroxy function includes but is not limited to  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, etc.), phenyl,  $C_{7-10}$  aralkyl (e.g. benzyl),  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl (e.g. formyl, acetyl, ethylcarbonyl, etc.), benzoyl,  $C_{7-10}$  aralkylcarbonyl (e.g. benzylcarbonyl etc.), tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and silyl. These groups may respectively have 1-3 substitu int groups such as halogen (e.g. fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine),  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, etc.), phenyl,  $C_{7-10}$  aralkyl (e.g. benzyl) and nitro.

While these protective groups can be removed by various methods known per se or analogous therewith, the procedures using an acid, a base, ultraviolet light, hydrazine, phenylhydrazine, sodium N-methyldithiocarbamate, tetrabutylammonium fluoride and palladium acetate, respectively, can be selectively utilized.

The compound (I) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt of this invention, on administration to man and other mammalian animals (e.g. mouse, rat, rabbit, dog, bovine, swine, etc.), inhibits secretion of gonadotropin to modulate blood steroid hormone levels, thanks to its GnRH receptor antagonizing activity, so that it can be safely used for the ovulation inhibitor, prevention agent for implantation of the ovum or the prophylactic and therapeutic agent for various diseases such as amenorrhea, prostatic cancer, prostatic hypertrophy, endometriosis, hysteromyoma, breast cancer, acne, precocious puberty, premenstrual syndrome, polycystic ovary syndrome, pituitary tumor and hyperandrogenism in humans.

The compound (I) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt of this invention can be safely used for a contaceptive for female or male, an ovulation-inducing agent for female, an estrus regulator in animals, an improvement of quality of the edible meats, a growth promotor in animals or an oviposition promotor in fish.

The compound (I) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt of this invention can be effectively used together with a sterolidal or non-stroidal antiandrogen agent.

The compound (I) and pharmaceutically acceptable salt of this invention have activity to antagonize monoamines uptake by synapses and an excessive calcium in influx into neurons in man and other mammalian animals (e.g. mouse, rat, rabbit, dog, cattle, swine, etc.) and can bused safely in the prevention and treatment

spirit and scope of the invention.

The term "room temperature" as used in the following reference examples and examples means the of 0-30°C. The meanings of the various symbols used are as follows.

: singlet : doublet : triplet : quartet

: multiplet

: broad

: coupling constant

: Herz Hz

: deuterochloroform CDCI<sub>3</sub> : tetrahydrofuran THF

: N,N-dimethylformamide **DMF** : dimethyl sulfoxide **DMSO** 

1H-NMR : proton nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum

(NMR spectra was measured by the free form.)

### Reference Example 1-1

15

2-(p-Fluorophenyl)-2-phenylacetonitrile

A solution of p-fluoromandelonitrile (45 g) in benzene (90 g) was added portionwiste to sulfuric acid (85 ml) with constant stirring at 5-10°C. After completion of portionwise addition, the mixture was further stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was then diluted with water (500 ml) and extracted with ethyl acetate (300 ml x 2). The extract was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to provide a colorless oil (59.5 g).

Using the corresponding mandelonitrile derivative and chlorobenzene, the following compounds 1-2 and 1-3 were respectively synthesized in otherwise the same manner as Reference Example 1-1.

### Compound 1-2:

2-(p-Chlorophenyl)-2-phenylacetonic-ile

### Compound 1-3:

35

Bis(p-chlorophenyl)acetonitrile

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the above compounds are shown in Table

Table 1

|      | ·ŅΓ |
|------|-----|
|      | CN  |
| لريا |     |
| Re   |     |

| 0 |                      |            |              | •                               | 1.4       |
|---|----------------------|------------|--------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
|   | Reference<br>Example | <b>K</b> 0 | Ar           | 'E-MER (J CDCls)                |           |
| 5 | 1-1                  | H          | -{○}F        | 5. 13 (18, s), 7. 00-7. 50 (9R. | •)        |
| ı | 1-2                  | H          | C) C1        | 5. 11 (1H. s), 7. 23-7. 42 (9H. | <b>a)</b> |
|   | 1-3                  | p-C1       | <b>√⊙</b> ¢1 | 5. 10 (1E, s), 7. 20-4. 20 (8E, | <b>a)</b> |

### Reference Example 2-1

25

### Ethyl 3-cyano-3,3-diphenylpropionate

To a solution of diphenylacetonitrile (1 g) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was added 60% sodium hydride (0.22 g) portionwise under ice-cooling and stirring. After completion of portionwise addition, the mixture was further stirred for 15 minutes. Then, ethyl brome scetate (0.69 ml) was added dropwise and the mixture was further stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was then diluted with water and the organic layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate) to provide the title compound (1.2 g) as colorless powder.

### Reference Example 2-2

### Ethyl 4-cyano-4,4-diphenylbutyrate

To an ethanolic solution (100 ml) of diphenylacetonitrile (28 g) were added DBU (6 ml) and thyl acrylate (30 ml) and the mixture was heated and stirred at 80°C for 16 hours. After cooling, 200 ml of 2N-hydrochloric acid was added to the reaction mixture, which was then extracted with isopropyl ether. The organic layer was washed with water, dried (anhydrous magnesium sulfate) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting crude crystals were recrystallized from hexane/isopropyl ether to provide ethyl 4-cyano-4,4-diphenyl-butyrate (34 g).

In the same manner as above, the reference compounds 2-3 ~ 6 were synthesized.

### Compound 2-3:

Ethyl 4-cyano-4-(p-fluorophenyl)-4-phenylbutyrate

### Compound 2-4:

Ethyl 4-cyano-4-(p-chlorophenyl)-4-phenylbutyrate

### Compound 2-5:

Ethyl 4-cyano-4,4-bis(p-choroph nyl)butyrat

### 5 Compound 2-6:

Ethyl 5-cyano-5,5-diphenylpentanoate
The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of these compounds are shown in Table 2.

| 51 (                                           | -1 92 (3H +)) 9 40-5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | -07 6 (+ BC) 66 1: 6                                                                                                                                                                    | (28. a) 2 11-2 82 (28. a) 4.11 (28. a).                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 43 ( 4. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. | 7.26-7.43 (10H, m) 1.23 (3H, t), 2.43 (2H, t), 2.73 (2H, t), 4.10 (2H, q), 7.00-7.40 (9H, m) 1.23 (3H, t), 2.38-2.48 (2H, m), 2.78-2.78 (2H, m), 4.10 (2H, q), 7.29-7.40 (9H, m) 1.23 (3H, t), 2.41 (2H, m), 2.70 (2H, m), 4.10 (2H, q), 7.20-7.40 (8H, m) 1.24 (3H, t), 1.69-1.86 (2H, m), 2.38 (2H, t), 2.38-2.48 (2H, m), 4.12 (2H, q), 7.23-7.43 (10H, m) | 3 1. 23 (3H, 1), 2. 43 (2<br>(9H, m) 3 1. 23 (3H, 1), 2. 43 (2<br>(9H, m) 3 1. 23 (3H, 1), 2. 38-2.  7. 29-7. 40 (9H, m) 3 1. 23 (3H, 1), 2. 41 (2<br>(8H, m) 4 1. 24 (3H, 1), 1. 69-1. | (O)-F 3 1.23 (34, t), 2.43 (2<br>(9H, m) (O)-c1 3 1.23 (3H, t), 2.38-2. (O)-c1 3 1.23 (3H, t), 2.38-2. (O)-c1 3 1.23 (3H, t), 2.41 (2<br>(SH, m) (O)-c1 4 1.24 (3H, t), 1.69-1. |

Ref renc Example 3-1

2.2-Diphenyl-1,4-butan diol

a piece de la filo de la companie d

In anhydrous THF (80 ml) was dissolved  $\alpha$ , $\alpha$ -diphenyl- $\gamma$ -butyrolactone (7 g) followed by addition of lithium aluminum hydride (1 g) with ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under the same conditions for 3 hours. Then, under ice-cooling, a saturated aqueous solution of Rochelle salt was added dropwise to precipitate the aluminum and other inorganic matter. The supernatant was taken by decantation, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from isopropyl ether to provide 2,2-diphenyl-1,4-butanediol

Reference Exançle 3-2

15

25

35

2-Diphenyl-1,5-pentanediol

In THF (120 ml) was dissolved ethyl 4-cyano-4,4-diphenylbutyrate (24 g) and the solution was added portionwise to a suspension of lithium aluminum hydride (4.2 g) in THF (200 ml) with ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred under ice-cooling for 2 hours, at the end of which time 2N-hydrochloric acid (200 ml) was added and the mixture was heated and stirred at 60°C for 2 hours. Then, ethyl acetate (400 ml) was added to the reaction mixture and the organic layer was separated, stirred and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in THF (200 ml) followed by addition of lithium aluminum hydride (4 g) with ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred under the same conditions for 2 hours, after which a saturated aqueous solution f Rochelle salt was added to the reaction mixture under ice-cooling to precipitate the aluminum and other inorganic matter The supernatant was taken by decantation, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate to provide 2-diphenyl-1,5-pentanediol (20.5 g). In the same manner as Reference Example 3-2, the following compounds 3-3 ~ 6 were synthesized.

Compound 3-3:

2-(p-Fluorophenyl)-2-phenyl-1,5-pentanediol

Compound 3-4:

2-(p-Chlorophenyl)-2-phenyl-1,5-pen anediol

Compound 3-5:

2,2-Bis(p-chlorophenyl)-1,5-pentanediol

Compound 3-6:

2,2-Diphenyl-1,6-hexanediol

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the above compounds are shown in Tab 3.

| 5<br>10<br>15<br>20<br>25<br>30 |         | R° — Ar OH | 'H-NYR (8ppm, CDCla) | 2.54 (2f, c). 3.61 (2ff, t), 4.21 (2ff, s), 7.16-7.45 (10ff, m) | 1.28-1.42 (2H, m). 2.19-2.30 (2H, m), 3.59 (2H, t), 4.17 (2H, s), 7.15-7.37 (10H, m) | 1.32 (2H, m), 2.22 (2H, m), 3.59 (2H, t), 4.13 (2H, s), 6.90-7.40 (9H, m) | 1.20-1.40 (2H, m), 1.95 (2H, br s), 2.22 (2H, m), 3.58 (2H, t), 4.12 (2H, s), 7.00 -7.40 (9H, m) | 1.20-1.40 (2H, m). 2.20 (2H, m). 3.60 (2H, t). 4.10 (2H, s), 7.00 -7.30 (9H, m) | 1.03-1.21 (2H, m), 1.42-1.61 (2H, m), 1.52 (1H, t), 1.63 (1H, br s), 2.12-2.22 (2H, m), 3.54 (2H, br t), 4.15 (2H, d), 7.12-7.35 (10H, m) |
|---------------------------------|---------|------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 40                              |         | •          | =                    | 2                                                               | ო                                                                                    | ຕ່                                                                        | က                                                                                                | m                                                                               |                                                                                                                                           |
| 45                              |         |            | . YL                 | 0                                                               | 0                                                                                    | <b>(</b>                                                                  | (O)                                                                                              |                                                                                 | 0                                                                                                                                         |
| 50                              | ٠:<br>: | ,          | &                    | =                                                               | <b>25</b>                                                                            | ×                                                                         |                                                                                                  | ទ្                                                                              | <b>*</b>                                                                                                                                  |
| 55                              | Table   |            | Reference<br>Example | 3-1                                                             | 3-5                                                                                  | 3-3                                                                       | 9-F                                                                                              | 3-5                                                                             | <b>9.</b>                                                                                                                                 |
|                                 |         |            |                      |                                                                 |                                                                                      |                                                                           | •                                                                                                |                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                           |

### R ference Example 4-1

4-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-4-phenylis chroman

In triflu roac tic acid (50 ml) was dissolv d 2,2-diph nyl-1,4-butanedi 1 (5 g) foll wed by addition of paraformaldehyde (1.7 g) and the mixture was heated and stirred at 50°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was the noncentrated under reduced pressure and the residul was dissolved in ethyl acetat, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethanol (100 ml) followed by addition of sodium hydroxide (4 g) and water (50 mt) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate as the eluent to provide 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-4-phenylisochroman (4.5 g).

In the same manner as Reference Example 4-1, the following Reference Example Compounds 4-2 were synthesized.

Compound 4-2:

4-(3-Hydroxypropyl)-4-phenylisochroman

20 Compound 4-3:

25

4-(p-Fluorophenyl)-4-(3-hydroxypropyl)isochroman

Compound 4-4:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-4-(3-hydroxypropyl)isochroman

Compound 4-5:

7-Chloro-4-(p-chlorophenyl)-4-(3-hydroxypropyl)isochroman

Compound 4-6:

4-(4-Hydroxybutyl)-4-phenylisochroman

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown if Table 4.

|           |                                        |                       | _                                                                                                                                                             |       |                                                                             |                                                                       |                                                                                            |                                                                                                                      |
|-----------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5         | •                                      |                       | 2. 26-2. 39 (1H, m). 2. 68 (1H, ddd). 3. 38 (1H, ddd). 3. 52-3. 67 (1H, m). 3. 85 (1H, dd). 4. 08 (1H, d). 4. 91 (2H, s). 6. 86 (1H, dd). 7. 04-7. 38 (9H, m) |       | 3. 89 (2H, s). 4. 87 (2H,                                                   | (2H, s). 4.86 (2H,                                                    | 3. 86 (2H, s), 4. 82 (2H,                                                                  | ). 3.58 (2H.                                                                                                         |
| 10        |                                        |                       | H, ddd), 3.5<br>6.86 (1H, d                                                                                                                                   | •     | t), 3.89 (2                                                                 | 3.89                                                                  | t), 3.86 (2)                                                                               | -2. 36 (2H, m)<br>(9H, m)                                                                                            |
| 15        |                                        | (1)                   | 4dd), 3.38 (1                                                                                                                                                 |       | 1. 40-1. 70 (2H, m), 2. 23 (2H, m), 3. 63 (2H, t), s), 6. 90-7. 30 (8H, m). | 1.40-1.70 (2H, m), 2.23 (2H, m), 3.63 (2H, t), s), 6.90-7.30 (8H, m). | 1. 40-1. 70 (2H, m). 2. 22 (2H, m). 3. 59 (2H, t). s). 6. 88 (1H, d). 7. 00-7. 30 (6H, m). | 1.23-1.48 (3H, m), 1.49-1.65 (2H, m), 2.07-2.36 (2H, m), 3.58 (2H, br t), 3.91, 4.87 (2H each, s), 6.94-7.34 (9H, m) |
| <b>20</b> | (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>n</sub> — 0H   | "H-NNR (J. p.,        | 2. 68 (1H, 6).                                                                                                                                                | •     | 2. 23 (2H. 1                                                                | 2. 23 (2H, m).                                                        | 2. 22 (2R. n<br>7. 00-7. 30 (6                                                             | 1. 49-1. 65 (<br>(2H each, s)                                                                                        |
| 25        | #\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\ | H.                    | 2.39 (1H, B)<br>(1H, dd), 4.                                                                                                                                  |       | 1. 40-1. 70 (2H, m), 2. 2<br>s), 6. 90-7. 30 (8H, m).                       | 1. 40-1. 70 (2H, m), 2. 23 (s), 6. 90-7. 30 (8H, m).                  | 1. 40-1. 70 (2H, m), 2. 22 (2H, m), 3. 59 s), 6. 88 (1H, d), 7. 00-7. 30 (6H, m).          | 1. 48 (3H. m).<br>3. 91, 4. 87                                                                                       |
| 30        | 82                                     | (C)                   | 2. 26-2.<br>3. 85 (11<br>(9H, n)                                                                                                                              |       | 1. 40-j<br>s). 6.                                                           | 1. 40-J<br>s), 6.                                                     | 1. 40-1<br>s), 6.                                                                          | 1. 23-1<br>br t),                                                                                                    |
| 35        |                                        | Melting<br>Point (°C) | Syrup                                                                                                                                                         | Syrup | Syrup                                                                       | Syrup                                                                 | Syrup                                                                                      | Syrup                                                                                                                |
| 40        |                                        | e                     | 2                                                                                                                                                             | က     | m                                                                           | ო                                                                     | m                                                                                          |                                                                                                                      |
| <b>45</b> |                                        | γr                    | (i)                                                                                                                                                           | 0     |                                                                             |                                                                       | ق<br>( <u>)</u>                                                                            | 0                                                                                                                    |
| 50        |                                        | &                     | =                                                                                                                                                             | m     | æ                                                                           | æ                                                                     | ភ្ជ                                                                                        | =                                                                                                                    |
| 55        | Table 4                                | Reference<br>Example  | 4-1                                                                                                                                                           | 4-2   | 4-3                                                                         | 1.                                                                    | 4-5                                                                                        | 9-7                                                                                                                  |
|           | •                                      |                       |                                                                                                                                                               |       | •                                                                           | •                                                                     |                                                                                            |                                                                                                                      |

Referenc Example 5-1

4-(2-lod ethyl)-4-phenylisochroman

In dichloromethane (20 ml) was dissolved 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-4-phenylisochroman (1 g), followed by addition of tosyl chloride (0.85 g) and triethylamine (1.5 ml) with ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, aft in which 2N-hydrochloric acid was added and the mixture was intracted with isopropylether. The organic layer was washed with water, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in acetone (50 ml) and after addition of sodium iodide (2 g) the solution was heated and stirred at 50°C for 24 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was diluted with water and extracted with isopropylether and the organic layer was washed with water, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The sidue was applied to a silica gel column and eluted with isopropylether to provide 4-(2-iodoethyl)-4-phenylisochroman as oil.

In the same manner as Reference Example 5-1, the following Reference Example Compounds 5-2 ~ 6 were synthesized.

Compound 5-2:

15

25

55

4-(3-lodopropyl)-4-phenylisochroman

20 Compound 5-3:

4-(p-Fluorophenyl)-4-(3-iodopropyl)isochroman

Compound 5-4:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-4-(3-iodopropyl)isochroman

Compound 5-5:

7-Chloro-4-(p-chlorophenyl)-4-(3-iodopropyl)isochroman

Compound 5-6:

4-(4-lodobutyl)-4-phenylisochroman

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds ar shown in Table 5.

3. 15 (2H,

(2H cach,

3.91.

|     | $\mathbb{R}^{0}$ $\longrightarrow$ $\mathbb{A}^{\Gamma}$ $(\mathbb{C}\mathbb{I}_{2})_{\mathbb{R}} - \mathbb{L}$ | H-MR (4,5,m, CDCls)   | 2.76-3.08 (3H, m), 3.20-3.39 (1H, m), 3.89 (2H, q), 4.87 6.90 (1H, d), 7.01-7.38 (8H, m) | 1.50-2.00 (2H, m), 2.29 (2H, m), 3.16 (2H, dt), 3.90 (2H, (2H, s), 6.90-7.30 (9H, m) | 1.60-1.90 (2H, m), 2.28 (2H, m), 3.16 (2H, dt), 3.87 (2H, d.86 (2H, s), 6.90-7.30 (8H, m). | 1.60-2.00 (2H, m), 2.10-2.40 (2H, m), 3.16 (2H, t), 3.87 4.87 (2H, s), 6.90-7.40 (8H, m) | 1.60-1.90 (2H, m), 2.29 (2H, m), 3.52 (2H, t), 3.84 (2H, 4.82 (2H, s), 6.85 (1H, d), 7.00-7.30 (6H, m) | 1. 25-1. 66 (2H, m), 1. 77-1. 92 (2H m), 2. 05-2. 33 (2H, m), 4), 3 91 4 88 (2H mach s) 6 93-7 34 (9H m) |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     |                                                                                                                 | Melting<br>Point (°C) | Syrup                                                                                    | 39-40                                                                                | Syrup                                                                                      | Syrup                                                                                    | Syrup                                                                                                  | Syrup                                                                                                    |
|     |                                                                                                                 | =<br>                 | I 2                                                                                      | ю ·<br>н                                                                             | е<br>н                                                                                     | e<br>E                                                                                   | <b>⇔</b>                                                                                               | <b>1</b>                                                                                                 |
| •   |                                                                                                                 | Λr                    | 0                                                                                        |                                                                                      | <b>Ö</b>                                                                                   | ()<br>()                                                                                 | (O)                                                                                                    | (i)                                                                                                      |
| , · | Table 5;                                                                                                        | eference Ro           | 5-1 H                                                                                    | 5-2 н                                                                                | 5-3                                                                                        | 5-4 H                                                                                    | 5-5 7-C1                                                                                               | 5-6 H                                                                                                    |

Refer nce Example 6-1

15

20

35

1-Bonz yl-2-(2-phenylethyl)-2-piperidinecarbonitrile

### ED 0 879 842 A1

To 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran containing 140 mmol fithlum diisopropylamide was added 15 g of solid 1-ben-zoyl-2-piperidinecarbonitrile at -78°C. The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes, after which 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran containing 33.2 g of phenethyl iodide was added dropwise at -78°C. After completion of dropwise addition, the temperature of the reaction mixture was gradually increased to 0°C. Then, water was added and the organic layer was separated. The aqueous layer was further extracted with ethyl acetate. The pooled organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and filtered and the solvent was then distilled off. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using ethyl acetate-hexane (1:2) as the eluent. The solution containing the desired compound was distilled under reduced pressure and the resulting solid was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to provide 17.3 g of colorless crystals. m.p. 65-67°C
1N-NMR (ppm. CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.52-2.00 (4H, m), 2.19 (2H, t, J=6Hz), 2.37-2.98 (4H, m), 3.29-3.57 (2H, m), 7.13-7.56 (10H, m)

| Elemental analysis for C <sub>21</sub> H <sub>22</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O |          |         |        |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|--------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Calcd.                                                                  | C 79.21; | H 6.96; | N 8.80 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Found                                                                   | C 79.13; | H 6.89; | N 8.64 |  |  |  |  |  |

25

30

35

In the same manner as Reference Example 6-1, the following compounds were synthesized.

### Reference Example 6-2

1-Benzoyl-2-[2-(3-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-2-piperidinecarbonitrile

### Reference Example 6-3

1-Benzoyl-2-[2-( 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethyl]-2-piperidinecarbonitrile

### Reference Example 6-4

1-Benzoyl-2-[2-thienylethyl]-2-piperidinecarbonitrile

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds ar shown in Table 6.

| <b>5</b> |         | Elemental Analysis (Found(Calculated)) | C <sub>22</sub> H <sub>24</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub> 75. 58 6. 98 7. 92 (75. 83 6. 94 8. 04)                                                     | Cz3HzeNzOs<br>73.21 7.16 7.35<br>(72.99 6.92 7.40)                                                                                                   | C <sub>1 e</sub> H <sub>1 e</sub> H <sub>1</sub> OS<br>70. 25 6. 07 8. 43<br>(70. 34 6. 21 8. 63)                                                                           |
|----------|---------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15       | ·       | NKR (4,,, CDCI,)                       | 9(2U, t, J-6H2), 2, 36-<br>7(2H, m), 3, 79(3H, s),<br>4-7, 25(1H, m), 7, 36-                                                                              | (2H, t, J-6Uz), 2, 34-<br>(2H, n), 3, 85(3U, s),<br>(3U, n), 7, 37-7, 58                                                                             | H. t. J-6Hz), 2. 45-<br>.m), 3. 29-3. 58(2H.m),<br>.dd, J-4. 5Hz), 7. 13<br>.58(5H.m)                                                                                       |
| 25       | •       |                                        | 1. 55-1. 98(4H, m), 2. 19(2H, t, J-6Hz), 2. 36-2. 96(4H, m), 3. 27-3. 57(2H, m), 3. 79(3H, s), 6. 71-6. 85(3H, m), 7. 14-7. 25(1H, m), 7. 36-7. 56(5H, m) | 1. 54-1. 99(48, m), 2. 19(28, t, J-6Uz), 2. 34-2. 94(48, m), 3. 27-3. 56(28, m), 3. 85(38, s), 3. 87(38, s), 6. 72-6. 83(38, m), 7. 37-7. 58 (58, m) | 1.50-1.97(4R.m), 2.17(2H.t.J=6Hz), 2.45-<br>2.80(2H.m), 2.92-3.22(2H.m), 3.29-3.58(2H.m),<br>6.83-6.87(1H.m), 6.92(1H.dd,J-4.5Hz), 7.13<br>(1H.dd,J=2.5=Hz),7.37-7.58(5H.m) |
| 30       |         | Melting<br>Point (°C)                  | 82-84                                                                                                                                                     | 011                                                                                                                                                  | 011 1.<br>2.<br>6.<br>6.                                                                                                                                                    |
|          |         | Structural<br>Pormula                  |                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>.</b> | ·       | S &                                    | C. S.                                                                                                                                                     | 5 5                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                             |
|          | Table 6 | Reference<br>Example                   | s , c                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                      | <b>F</b>                                                                                                                                                                    |

Reference Example 6-5

3,4-Dihydrospiro[naphthalene-2(1H), 2'-piperidin]-1-one hydrochloride

| •<br>.*      | alysis                                             | 5. 03                                                                                                                                                                              | /4H <sub>2</sub> 0<br>4. 91<br>4. 89)                                                                                                                                       | /4H <sub>2</sub> 0<br>4. 51<br>4. 43)                                                                                                                                          | 5.37<br>5.43)                                                                                                                |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5            | Elemental Analysis<br>[Found/Celculated)]<br>C H N | C1.6H.0C1NO2<br>64.04 7.20<br>(63.94 7.15                                                                                                                                          | C <sub>15</sub> H <sub>20</sub> ClNO <sub>2</sub> -1/4H <sub>2</sub> O<br>63.02 7.08 4.91<br>(62.93 7.22 4.89)                                                              | C1.8H2.CINO3-1/4H2O<br>61.01 7.10 4.51<br>(60.75 7.17 4.43                                                                                                                     | C <sub>12</sub> H <sub>14</sub> NOSC1<br>55.78 6.26<br>(55.91 6.26                                                           |
| 10           |                                                    | 0 6 6                                                                                                                                                                              | J 5                                                                                                                                                                         | ມີ 9 ອ                                                                                                                                                                         | J - J                                                                                                                        |
|              |                                                    | 16(1H.<br>I, m).<br>H, dd, J                                                                                                                                                       | 05-3.<br>O(14; m)<br>(18, t, J                                                                                                                                              | .35(1H.<br>J=5Hz).<br>H. s). 6.                                                                                                                                                | 2. 46-<br>IR. d.                                                                                                             |
| 15           | CDC1,)                                             | 1. 31-1. 88(6H, m), 1. 89-2. 10(1H, m), 2. 16(1H, br s), 2. 34-2. 50(1H, m), 2. 74-3. 14(4H, m), 3. 84(3H, s), 6. 66(1H, d, 1-3Hz), 6. 82(1H, dd, 1-9Hz, 3Hz), 7. 99(1H, d, 1-9Hz) | 1. 42-2. 21(68, m), 2. 74-2. 85(24, m), 3. 05-3. 19(21, m), 3. 36-3. 55(11, m), 3. 76-4. 00(11, m), 3. 88(31, s), 6. 81(21, t, J=812), 7. 42(11, t, J=81z), 9. 06(11, br s) | 1. 33-1. 85(58. m). 1. 93-2. 10(1H. m). 2. 35(1H. br. s). 2. 42(1H. t. J-5Hz). 2. 50(1H. t. J-5Hz). 2. 76-3. 35(4H. m). 3. 92(3H. s). 3. 93(3H. s). 6. 64(1H. s). 7. 50(1H. s) | 1. 34-1. 90(7H, m), 2. 02-2. 18(1H, m), 2. 46-<br>2. 60(1H, m), 2. 75-3. 21(4H, m), 7. 09(1H, d, J=5Hz), 7. 37(1H, d, J=5Hz) |
| 20           | NYR (1,,,, CDC1,)                                  | 1. 31-1. 88(6H, m), 1. 89-2. 10(br s), 2. 34-2. 50(1H, m), 2. 74 3. 84(3H, s), 6. 66(1H, d, 1-3Hz) -9Hz, 3Hz), 7. 99(1H, d, 1-9Hz)                                                 | 18. m), 2, 74-2<br>36-3, 55(111,<br>1, 6, 81(2ft, t,<br>(1ft, br. s)                                                                                                        | 58. m), 1. 93-7<br>(1H, t, J=5Hz)<br>4H, m), 3. 92(<br>.50(1H, s)                                                                                                              | 1. 34-1. 90(7H, m), 2. 02-2.<br>2. 60(1H, m), 2. 75-3. 21(4H<br>J-SHz), 7. 37(1H, 4. J-SHz)                                  |
| 25           | 6                                                  | 1. 31–1. 88(6<br>br s), 2. 34–<br>3. 84(31, s),<br>–9ffz, 3ffz), 7                                                                                                                 | 1. 42-2. 21(68, m), 2. 74-<br>19(211, m), 3. 36-3. 55(111<br>, 3. 88(311, s), 6. 81(2ft, t<br>-8ftz), 9. 06(1ft, br s)                                                      | 1. 33-1. 85(58. n). 1. 9;<br>br s). 2. 42(111, t, 1-5)<br>2. 76-3. 35(411, n). 3. 9;<br>64(111, s). 7. 50(111, s)                                                              | 1.34-1.90(7<br>2.60(1H).<br>J=58z), 7.3                                                                                      |
| 30           | Melting<br>Point (°C)                              | 249<br>(decomposed)                                                                                                                                                                | 255-259<br>(decomposed)                                                                                                                                                     | 245-248<br>(decomposed)                                                                                                                                                        | >280                                                                                                                         |
| 35           |                                                    | (de                                                                                                                                                                                | . de                                                                                                                                                                        | (dec                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                              |
|              |                                                    | -8CI                                                                                                                                                                               | -#C1                                                                                                                                                                        | -1101                                                                                                                                                                          | <b></b> a                                                                                                                    |
|              | Structural<br>Formula                              |                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                             | )==<br>0-\( \)                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                              |
| 45           | Stri                                               | <b>Q</b>                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                             | OF HO                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                              |
| S<br>Table 7 | Reference<br>Example                               | 9-9                                                                                                                                                                                | .6-7                                                                                                                                                                        | <b>8</b> -9                                                                                                                                                                    | 6-6                                                                                                                          |

Reference Example 6-10

55

3,4-Dihydrospiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidin]-1-ol

In 20 ml of methanol was dissolved 0.80 g of 3,4-dihydrospiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidin]-1-on. Then, 0.15 g of sodium borohydride was added portionwise. The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes, after which it was diluted with water and extracted with methylene chloride. The methylene chloride layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and filtered and the solvent was then distilled off. The solid residue was recrystalized from methylene chloride-ether to provide 0.25 g of white crystals.

m.p. 125-127°C

1H-NMR (ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.32-1.98 (8H, m), 2.28 (1H, q, J=7Hz), 2.74-2.94 (4H, m), 4.37 (1H, s), 7.07-7.28 (4H, m), 7.40-7.52 (1H, m)

| Elemental analys | sis for C <sub>14</sub> H <sub>19</sub> N | 0       |        |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------|--------|
| Calcd.           | C 77.38;                                  | Н 8.81; | N 6.45 |
| Found            | C 77.16;                                  | H 8.84; | N 7.01 |

In the same manner as Reference Example 6-10, the following compounds were synthesized.

Reference Example 6-11

25

30

35

3.4-Dihydro-6-methoxyspiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidin)-1-ol

Reference Example 6-12

3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxyspiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidin)-1-ol hydrochloride

Reference Example 6-13

6,7-Dihydrospiro[benzo[b]thiophene-5(4!.),2'-piperidin)-4-ol hydrochloride

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown in Table 8.

|    | •       | 1 .                                     | 1                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                              |
|----|---------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5  |         | alysis<br>d)]                           | 5.66                                                                                                                                                                 | 1/5H20<br>4.49<br>4.41)                                                                                                                               | 5.34                                                                                                         |
|    |         | tal Angeleufate                         | 8. 62<br>8. 55<br>8. 56                                                                                                                                              | 7. 69<br>7. 75                                                                                                                                        | 6. 92<br>6. 98                                                                                               |
| 10 |         | Elemental Analysis<br>(Found/Celeusted) | C <sub>15</sub> H <sub>21</sub> NO <sub>2</sub><br>72.85 8.62<br>(72.84 8.56                                                                                         | C, 4K, 4C1NO, 1/5H, 0<br>60.76 7.69 4.49<br>(60.54 7.75 4.41)                                                                                         | C <sub>13</sub> H <sub>14</sub><br>55. 15<br>(55. 48                                                         |
| 15 | •       |                                         | 1), 2, 74–2.<br>), 6, 64(111,<br>), 7, 33(111, d,                                                                                                                    | m), 2, 73(2H, (31l, s), 3, 86                                                                                                                         | 1. 30-1. 90(811, m), 2. 08-2. 40(2H, m), 2. 75-<br>2. 90(4H, m), 4. 38(1H, s), 7. 00(1H, d),<br>7. 12(1H, d) |
| 20 |         | NWR (4,,, CDC1,)                        | 2. 22(1H, 1. 31(1H, 5. 1-9Bz, 3Rz                                                                                                                                    | -2. 24(2H,<br>H, H), 3. 84<br>59(IH, S),                                                                                                              | 2. 08-2. 40<br>1, s). 7. 00                                                                                  |
|    |         | (3,                                     | R. 5). 4<br>R. 4d, 1                                                                                                                                                 | 2. 90(2<br>3). 6.                                                                                                                                     | i. ■). ′;<br>1. 38(1):                                                                                       |
| 25 |         | NYR                                     | 1. 33-1. 87(9H, m), 2. 06-2. 22(1H, m), 2. 74-2.<br>89(4H, m), 3. 78(3H, s), 4. 31(1H, s), 6. 64(1H,<br>d, J=3Hz), 6. 67(1H, dd, J=9Hz, 3Hz), 7. 33(1H, d,<br>J=9Hz) | 1. 36-1. 80(8H. m), 2. 03-2, 24(2H. m), 2. 73(2H, t, J-7Hz), 2. 80-2, 90(2H, m), 3. 84(3H, s), 3. 86(3H, s), 4. 28(1H, s), 6. 59(1H, s), 6. 95(1H, s) | 1.30-1.90(811, m), 2.08-2.40(2H, m),<br>2.90(4H, m), 4.38(1H, s), 7.00(1H, d),<br>7.12(111, d)               |
| 30 | •       | Melting<br>Point (°C)                   | 132-134 1. 3<br>890<br>d, J<br>J=9                                                                                                                                   | 213-216 1.<br>(decomposed) t.                                                                                                                         | 215-221<br>(decomposed)                                                                                      |
| 35 |         | : 25 P4                                 | <b>:-</b>                                                                                                                                                            | 2)<br>(dec                                                                                                                                            | 21<br>(decc                                                                                                  |
| 40 |         | iral                                    | <b>=</b>                                                                                                                                                             | - IG                                                                                                                                                  | ()±₩ 22                                                                                                      |
| 45 |         | Structur                                | OF CHILD                                                                                                                                                             | CH, OC.                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                              |
| 50 | Table 8 | Reference<br>Example                    | -11<br>-9                                                                                                                                                            | 6-12                                                                                                                                                  | 6-13                                                                                                         |
| 55 | _       | •                                       | *                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                              |

Reference Example 6-14

3,4-Dihydrospiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

HC1

(1) To 200 ml of a methylene chloride solution containing 3.36 g of 3,4-dihydrospiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2' piperidin]-1-one was added 2.6 g of potassium carbonate. Then, 50 ml of a methylene chloride solution containing 3.4 ml of trifluoroacetic anhydride was added dropwise at 0°C and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and extracted with methylene chloride. The methylene chloride layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and filtered and the solvent was then distilled off. The residue was purified by silice gel column chromatography using ethyl acetate/hexane (1:2) as the eluent and the eluate containing the desired compound was distilled under reduced pressure. The solid residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to provide 4.86 g of 1'-trifluoroacetyl-3,4-dihydrospiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidin]-1-one as colorless needles.

m.p. 97-100°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.60-2.25 (7H, m), 2.67-3.16 (3H, m), 3.35-3.53 (1H, m), 3.82-3.98 (1H, m), 7.16 7.52 (3H, m), 8.20 (1H, dd, J=8 Hz, 1.2 Hz)

| Elemental analysis for C <sub>16</sub> H <sub>16</sub> F <sub>3</sub> NO <sub>2</sub> |          |         |        |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|--------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Calcd.                                                                                | C 61.73; | H 5.18; | N 4.50 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Found                                                                                 | C 61.47; | H 5.20; | N 4.40 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

(2) In 30 ml of acetic acid was dissolved 4.44 g of 1'-trifluoroacetyl-3,4-dihydrospiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidin]-1-one and using 0.76 g of 10% palladium-on-carbon as the catalyst, catalytic reduction was carried out at 4 kg/cm² and 80°C. The reaction mixture was then poured in water, made basic with 10% aqueous sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with methylene chloride. The methylene chlorid layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and filtered and the solvent was then distilled off. The residue was treated with 3.6 ml of 4N-methanolic HCl to give a solid. This solid was recrystallized from methylene chloride-ether to provide 2.51 g of white crystals.

m.p. 200-202°C

H-NMR (ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.43-1.80 (8H, m), 1.84-2.02 (1H, m), 2.77 (2H, s), 2.84 (4H, t, J=5Hz), 7.10 (4H,

| Elemental analy | sis for C <sub>14</sub> H <sub>20</sub> C | 1N•1/4H <sub>2</sub> O |        |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------|
| Calcd.          | C 69.40;                                  | H 8.53;                | N 5.78 |
| Found           | C 69.62;                                  | H 8.38;                | N 5.64 |

Reference Example 6-15

15

20

25

30

35

3,4-Dihydro-6-methoxyspiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

In 30 ml of trifluoroacetic acid was dissolved 6.57 g of 3,4-dihydro-6-methoxyspiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2 piperidin]-1-one followed by addition of 8.5 ml of triethylsilane and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. This reaction mixture was poured portionwise in water and after addition of 1N-hydrochloric acid, washed with hexane. The aqueous layer was made basic with 1N-aqueous sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with methylene chloride. The methylene chloride layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and filtered and the solvent was then distilled off. The residue was treated with 7.0 ml of 4N-methanolic HCl to give a solid. This solid was

recrystallized from methanolether to provide 5.09 g of whit  $\,$  crystals. m.p. 201-203°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.31-2.00 (9H, m), 2.71 (2H, s), 2.74-2.88 (4H, m), 3.77 (3H, m), 6.62-6.73 (2H, m), 6.98 (1H, m)

| El mental analys | sis for C <sub>15</sub> H <sub>22</sub> | CINO•1/5H <sub>2</sub> | 0      |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------|--------|
| Calcd.           | C 66.38;                                | H 8.32;                | N 5.16 |
| Found            | C 66.65;                                | H 8.46;                | N 5.03 |

In the same manner as Reference Example 6-15, the following compounds were synthesized.

Reference Example 6-16

3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxyspiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

Reference Example 6-17

3,4-Dihydro-8-methoxyspiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

Reference Example 6-18

20

35

6,7-Dihydrospiro[benzo[b]thiophene-5(4H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown in Table 9.

|                         |                       | •                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                        |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                         | lysis                 | 4. 66                                                                                | 5. 16                                                                                                                                          | 5. 38<br>5. 75)                                                                        |
| 5                       | Elemental Analysis    | C1 e II z C I NO z<br>14. 20 8. 13<br>14. 53 8. 12                                   | C, sHz, CINO<br>67. 28 8. 15<br>67. 28 8. 28                                                                                                   | C <sub>1.</sub> H <sub>14</sub> NSC1<br>58.96 7.09 5.38<br>(59.12 7.44 5.75)           |
| 10                      | Elemer [Founds        | C1.6112.C1NO<br>64.20 8.13<br>(64.53 8.12                                            | C18H21C1NO<br>67.28 8.15<br>(67.28 8.28                                                                                                        | C1.1H1.NSC1<br>58.96 7.0<br>(59.12 7.4                                                 |
| 15                      | G                     | (6H, L), 3. 83                                                                       | 1. 40-1. 74(8H, m), 1. 81-1. 98(1H, m), 2. 53-<br>2. 96(6H, m), 3. 81(3H, s), 6. 66(1H, d, J-8Hz),<br>6. 73(1H, d, J-8Hz), 7. 09(1H, d, J-8Hz) | (III. e).                                                                              |
| <b>20</b>               | NWR (4,,, CDC1,)      | 1. 39-2. 00(9H. m), 2. 63-2. β8(6H, m), 3. 83<br>(6H, s), 6. 55(1H, s), 6. 59(1H, s) | 1. 40-1. 74(8H, m), 1. 81-1. 98(1H, m), 2. 53-<br>2. 96(6H, m), 3. 81(3H, s), 6. 66(1H, d, J-8Hz)<br>6. 73(1H, d, J-8Hz), 7. 09(1H, d, J-8Hz)  | 1. 40-1. 85(8H, m), 1. 92-2. 05(1H, m), 2. 52-2. 90(6H, m), 6. 72(1H, d), 7. 08(1H, d) |
| 25                      | N                     | . 39-2. 00(9K.<br>6K. s), 6. 55(1                                                    | . 40-1. 74(8H,<br>. 96(6H, m), 3.<br>. 73(1H, d. J-8                                                                                           | 1. 40-1. 85(8H, 12. 52-2. 90(6H, 17. 08(1H, d)                                         |
| 30                      | Melting<br>Point (°C) | 205-208<br>1                                                                         | 239-241 1. 2. 2. 2. 2. 6.                                                                                                                      | 212-220 1<br>2<br>7                                                                    |
| 35                      | 2. 0.                 | 2                                                                                    | 64                                                                                                                                             | Ä ·                                                                                    |
| 40                      | ural                  | <u> </u>                                                                             | . ()==                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                        |
| <b>45</b>               | Structu<br>Formula    | 9.0° E                                                                               | 5. O                                                                                                                                           | B                                                                                      |
| Table 9                 | Reference<br>Example  | 9-16                                                                                 | 6-17                                                                                                                                           | <b>6-18</b>                                                                            |
| 85<br>Reference Example | <br>.7.1              |                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                        |

Reference Example 7-1

4-Amino-3,3-diphenylbutanol

To a solution of thyl 3-cyano-3,3-diphenylpropionat (reference compound 2-1) (1.2 g) in tetrahydrofuran (30 ml) was added lithium aluminum hydrid (0.44 g) portionwise with ice-cooling and stirring. After completion of dropwise addition, the mixture was heat d and stirred at 60°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was then cooled with ice again, and water (1 ml), 15% aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (3 ml) and water (1 ml) were added in the order month, and the resulting precipitate was filtered off and the filtrat was attracted using added in the order month attracted aqueous sodium hydrogon carbonate solution. The organic layer was separated, ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness. The residue was washwashed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness. The residue was washed with ethyl acetate to provide the title compound (0.82 g) as colorless powder.

ed with ethyl acetate to provide the title compound (0.52 g).

Reference Example Compounds 7-2 ~ 4 were synthesized from reference compound 2-2, 2-4 and 2-5 respectively in the same manner as Reference Example 7-1.

Compound 7-2:

5-Amino-4,4-diphenylpentanol

Compound 7-3:

5-Amino-4-(p-chlorophenyl)-4-phenylpentanol

20 Compound 7-4:

5-Amino-4,4-bis(p-chlorophenyl)pentanol
The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown in
Table 10.

25

15

30

35

40

45

50

|    | ·                                                                       | 1                                                         |          | s),                                                                                                   |                                       |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
|    |                                                                         | a                                                         | · . ·    | 1. 17-1. 33 (2H, B), 1. 55 (2H, br), 2. 14-2. 24 (2H, B), 3. 31 (2H, s), a se con ex a rora 28 (on ex | br), 2.14-2.24 (2H, m), 3.29 (2H, s). |
| 5  |                                                                         | (10H,                                                     |          | 3.3                                                                                                   | 3.29                                  |
|    |                                                                         | 0-7.33                                                    |          | ZH, B)                                                                                                | (F)                                   |
| 10 |                                                                         | 7.1                                                       |          | . 24 (                                                                                                | 24 (                                  |
|    |                                                                         | 2H, s)                                                    |          | 2. 14-2                                                                                               | 2. 14-2                               |
| 15 | C(C1)).                                                                 | 3. 23 (                                                   | ₹.**     | ķ.).                                                                                                  |                                       |
|    |                                                                         | 2.32 (2H, t), 3.15 (2H, t), 3.23 (2H, s), 7.10-7.33 (10H, |          | 5 (2H.                                                                                                | 7. 00-7. 30 (8H,                      |
| 20 | H-NKR (8pp.                                                             | 5 (2H,                                                    | • •      | 1.55                                                                                                  | m), 1.55<br>7.00–7.30                 |
|    | ± 1                                                                     | ), 3.1                                                    |          | 2H, E)                                                                                                | (2H, E)                               |
| 25 |                                                                         | (2H, t                                                    |          | 1. 33                                                                                                 | , e                                   |
|    |                                                                         | 2.32                                                      |          | 1. 17-1                                                                                               | 3. 55 (2H, 30 35 (2H, 30 37)          |
| 30 | _   3                                                                   |                                                           |          |                                                                                                       |                                       |
|    | (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>m</sub> - OH<br>CH <sub>3</sub> NH <sub>2</sub> | 131-133                                                   | Syrup    | Syrup                                                                                                 | Syrup                                 |
| 35 | CH3NH2 Melt                                                             | 13                                                        | SO.      | V3                                                                                                    | Č.                                    |
|    | ¥                                                                       |                                                           |          |                                                                                                       |                                       |
| 40 | <b>□</b>  •                                                             | 2                                                         | <b>ന</b> | က                                                                                                     | က                                     |
|    | Ar Ar                                                                   | 100                                                       | 3) (6)   | 376                                                                                                   |                                       |
| 45 |                                                                         | 100                                                       |          |                                                                                                       |                                       |
|    | 10                                                                      |                                                           | <b>*</b> |                                                                                                       | Ş                                     |
| 50 | Table rence                                                             |                                                           | 83       |                                                                                                       |                                       |
|    | Table                                                                   | 1                                                         | 2        | 7-                                                                                                    | 7-4                                   |

Reference Example 8-1

4-Formylamino-3,3-diphenylbutanol In formic acid (100 ml) was dissolved 4-amino-3,3-diphenylbutanol (reference compound 7-1) (17.1 g) fol

lowed by addition of acetic anhydride (16 ml) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 7 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue was distributed between chloroform and water. The aqueous layer was made basic with aqueous ammonia and xtracted with chloroform. The xtract was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was dissolved in ml) and the solution was stirred with 1N-sodium hydroxide solution (60 ml) at room temperature for 15 minut s. To this reaction mixture was added water and the resulting crystals were recovered by filtration. The crystals were washed serially with water and ethyl acetate to provide the title compound (16 g) as colorless powd r.

The following Reference Example Compounds 8-2 ~ 4 were synthesized in the same manner as Reference Example 8-1.

10

Compound 8-2:

5-Formylamino-4,4-diphenylpentanol

15 Compound 8-3:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-5-formylamino-4-phenylpentanol

Compound 8-4:

20

4,4-Bis(p-chlorophenyl)-5-formylaminopentanol
The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown in
Table 11.

25

30

35

40

45

50

| Reference Pt Ar B Molting 14-NWR (1,1,1, CDC13)  Rample 8-1 H O 2 133-135 2.28 (2H, t). 3.17 (2H, q). 3.90 (2H, d). 4.37 (1H, t). 7.11-7.34 (10R, m). 7.48 (1H, br t). 7.88 (1H, d)  8-2 H O 2 151-152 1.32 (2H, m). 2.16 (2H, d). 3.30 (2H, d). 5.10-5.31 (1H, t). 7.10-7.37 (9H, m). 2.03 (2H, d). 3.88 (2H, dd). 4.36 (2H, d).  8-3 H O C 3 175-178 1.00-1.20 (2H, m). 2.04 (2H, t). 3.30 (2H, q). 3.86 (2H, d). 4.36 | Table 11     |          | C(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>n</sub> – 0H |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 133-135 2<br>3 151-152 1<br>3 159-161 1<br>3 175-178 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Reference Po | Ar B     | NHCHO<br>Metting                      |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3 151-152<br>3 159-161<br>3 175-178                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 8-1 H        | 2 (0)    | 133-135                               | - 1                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 3 159-161<br>3 175-178                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 8-2 н        | ()<br>() | 151-152                               | (10H, m), 7.48 (1H, br t), 7.88 (1H, d)<br>1.32 (2H, m), 2.16 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t), 4.05 (2H, d), 5.10-5.30                                                                                |
| 3 175-178                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | æ-3<br>×     |          | 159-161                               | 7. 10-7. 40 (10H, m), 8. 08 (1H, d).<br>1. 00-1. 23 (2H, m), 2. 03 (2H, t), 3. 30 (2H, q), 3. 88 (2H, dd), 4. 3                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 8-4 p-c1     | ,<br>(o) | 175-178                               | (1M, t), 7.10-7.37 (9H, m), 7.48 (1H, br t), 7.87 (1H, d)<br>1.00-1.20 (2H, m), 2.04 (2H, t), 3.30 (2H, q), 3.86 (2H, d), 4.34<br>(1H, t), 7.10-7.40 (9H, m), 7.55 (1H, h, t), 7.99 (1H, d) |

85 Reference Example 9-1

10

4-Formylamino-3,3-diphenylbutyl tosylat
To a suspension of 4-formylamino-3,3-diphenylbutanol (21.5 g) in methylene chloride (250 ml) were added

triethylamin (22 ml), 4-dimethylaminopyridine (catalyst amount) and tosyl chloride (15.3 g) and the mbture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reacti in mixture was concentrated to dryness and dissolved in water-ethyl acetat. The ethyl acetate layer was washed with 1N-hydrochl ric acid, furth r washed with wat r, dried ov r anhydrous sodium sulfat , and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (n-hexane: ethyl acetate 4:1 ~ 1:1) to provide the title compound (32 g) as colorless

Reference Example compound 9-4 was synthesized in the same manner as Reference Example 9-1.

# Compound 9-4:

10

35

· 4,4-Bis(p-chlorophenyl)-5-(formylamino)pentyl tosylate

#### Reference Example 9-2

5-Formylamino-1-iodo-4,4-diphenylpentane

To a solution of 5-formylamino-4,4-diphenylpentanol (38.3 g) in methylene chloride (600 ml) were added p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (29.2 g), triethylamine (15 g) and a catalyst amount of 4,4-dimethylaminopyridine and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was then concentrated to dryness and sodium iodide (46.6 g) and acetone (600 ml) were added to the residue. The mixture was heated and stirred at 50°C for 2 hours, after which it was concentrated to dryness. The residue was extracted with ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was separated and washed with aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution. It was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to provide the title compound (46.5 g) as yellow syrup.

Reference Example Compound 9-3 was synthesized in the same manner as Reference Example 9-2.

# Compound 9-3:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-5-formylamino-1-iodo-4-phenylpentane

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown in Table 12.

|   |          | . CUCL1)                | 2. 45 (3H, s), 2. 52 (2H, t), 3. 87 (2H, t), 3. 95 (2H, d), 3. 90-5. 20 (1H, br), 7. 00-7. 40 (12H, b), 7. 67 (2H, d), 8. 08 (1H, d). | (2H, m), 3, 10 (2H, t), 4, 04 (ZH, d), OH, m), 8, 11 (1H, d) | નં ⊹ે                     | a), 5. 00-5. 20 (1H, Br), 7. 00-7. 40 (1H, d).                                          |
|---|----------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | ), n – L |                         |                                                                                                                                       | 1. 49-1. 65<br>5. 07 (1H.                                    | 1. 46-1. 63<br>5. 08 (1H, | 2. 45 (3H, s), 3. 90-4. 00 (4H, m), 5. 00-5. 20 (10H, m), 7. 72 (2H, m), 8. 08 (1H, d). |
|   | Ar (CB,  | Melting<br>Point (°C)   | 2 Syrup                                                                                                                               | 3 Syrup                                                      | 3 Syrup                   | 3 Syrup                                                                                 |
|   | ĕ.       | Ar L                    |                                                                                                                                       | -<br>)©                                                      | _<br>) (¢                 |                                                                                         |
| • | Table 12 | Reference R*<br>Example | 9-1<br>F                                                                                                                              | 9-2 H                                                        | B-3                       | 9-4 P-CI                                                                                |

Reference Example 10-1

25

35

55

1-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]-4-formylamino-3,3-diphenylbutane dihydrochloride

A mixture of 4-formylamino-3,3-diphenylbutyl tosylate (7 g) and 1-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazine (5.2 g) was heated in acet nitril (50 ml) at 60°C with stining for 4 hours. The reaction mixtur was then concentrated to dryness and dissolved in water-ethyl acetate. The thyl acetate layer was washed with water, dried ov r anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) and treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (7 g) as whit crystals.

R ference Example Compounds 10-2, 10-4 ~ 8 and 10-10 ~ 12 were respectively synth sized in the same manner as Reference Example 10-1.

Compound 10-2:

10

5-Formylamino-1-morpholino-4,4-diphenylpentane hydrochloride

Compound 10-4:

15 5-1

5-Formylamino-1-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1(H)-3-benzazepin-3-yl]-4,4-diphenylpentane hydrochloride

Compound 10-5:

5-Formylamino-1-dimethylamino-4,4-diphenylpentane

Compound 10-6

1-(N-Benzyl-N-methylamino)-5-formylamino-4,4-diphenylpentane hydrochloride

25 Compound 10-7:

5-Formylamino-4,4-diphenyl-1-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)pentane

Compound 10-8:

30

35

1-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]-5-formylamino-4,4-diphenylpentane dihydrochloride

Compound 10-10:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-5-formylamino-4-phenyl-1-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)pentane dihydrochloride

Compound 10-11:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-5-formylamino-4-phenyl-1-(4-phenylpiperidino)pentane hydrochloride

Compound 10-12

4,4-Bis(p-chlorophenyl)-1-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]-5-(formylamino)pentane dihydrochlorid

45 Reference Example 10-3

N-(5-Formylamino-4,4-diphenylpentyl)phthalimide

A mixture of 5-formylamino-1-lodo-4,4-diphenylpentane (7 g) and potassium phthalimide (3.63 g) was stirred in DMF (40 ml) at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured in Ice-water and th syrup which separated out was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was washed with isopropyl ether to provide the title compound (5.2 g) as colorless powder.

Reference Example Compound 10-9 was synthesized in the same manner as Reference Example 10-3.

55 Compound 10-9:

N-[4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-5-formylamino-4-phenylpentyl]phthalimide
The structural formulas, physical prop rties and NMR spectra of the above compounds are shown in Ta-

| 10<br>15  |       |            |            | MER (4,,, CDCI,)      | 2. 10-2. 40 (4H, m), 2. 52 (4H, t), 3. 08 (4H, t), 4. 05 (2H, d), 5. 60-5. 80 (1H, br s), 6. 80-7. 00 (4H, m), 7. 10-7. 40 (10H, m), 0. 10 (1H, m), 10-7. | 6.12 (114, d). 1.26 (2H, m), 2.00-2.30 (6H, m), 3.64 (4H, t), 4.04 | J-1. 58 (211,<br>d), 5. 00 ( | (2H. m), 7.75-7.85 (2H, m), 8.02 (1H, d)<br>(2H. m), 2.09 (2H, m), 2.38 (4H, t),<br>(4H, m), 4.05 (2H, d), 5.10 (1H, br | . m). 8.09 (1H, d).<br>-1.31 (2H, m). 2.04-2.22 (4H, m). 2.09 (6H, s). | ., 5. 16 (11f, 5<br>36 (2ff, 11), 2<br>., 3. 36 (2ff, 5 | (15H, m), 8.06 (1H, d)<br>(2H, m), 2.04-2.20 (2H, m), 2.30<br>3.13 (4H, t), 4.06 (2H, d), 5.09 ( | 6.79-6.92 (3H, m). 7.12-7.37(12H, m). 8.09 (1H, d)<br>1.20-1.40 (2H, m). 2.10-2.40 (4H, m). 2.45 (4H, t). 3.05<br>(4H, t). 4.06 (2H, d). 5.10 (1H, br s). 6.80-7.00 (4H, m).<br>7.10-7.40 (10H, m). 8.10 (1H, d). |
|-----------|-------|------------|------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>30</b> |       |            | <b>3</b> 0 | Melting<br>Point (°C) | 145-148                                                                                                                                                   | Noncrystal.<br>line powder                                         | 171-172                      | 123-126                                                                                                                 | 98-99                                                                  | 97-105                                                  | Syrup                                                                                            | Noncrystal-<br>line powder                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 35        |       | (CH1), - R | o •xBC€    | ×                     | 2 2                                                                                                                                                       | 3 1                                                                | ၊<br>က                       | m<br>m                                                                                                                  | ี<br>เก                                                                | <b></b>                                                 | . I                                                                                              | 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 40        |       | #7         | CELO CELO  | R. Ar                 | <ul><li>○</li><li>=</li></ul>                                                                                                                             | ( <u>)</u>                                                         |                              | (C)                                                                                                                     | (O)                                                                    | ) ( <u>)</u>                                            | (O)                                                                                              | (O)                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 45        | 13    | •          | R9-        | ice R'                | -{()}{()}-                                                                                                                                                |                                                                    | 9                            |                                                                                                                         | -N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>                                      |                                                         |                                                                                                  | -I.J.(O)-F                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 50<br>85  | Table |            |            | Reference<br>Example  | 10-1                                                                                                                                                      | 10-2                                                               | 10-3                         | 10-4                                                                                                                    | 10-5                                                                   | 10-6                                                    | 10-7                                                                                             | 10-8                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

| 5           |                         | 3.61 (2H, t), 3.57<br>H, m), 7.65-7.83                                     | 5. 2. 31 (2H, t), 2. 46<br>5. 10 (1H, br t),                     | 6. 10 (1n. q)<br>2. 29 (2n. t),<br>(2n. dd), 5. 21 | 8.19 (1M, d) 1, m), 2.46 (4M, t), 3.06 br s), 6.80-7.30 (12M, m)                           |
|-------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10          | NIR (4,,,, CDC1,s)      | 2.03-2.19 (2H, m), 3.61 (2H, t), 3. br s), 6.99-7.33 (9H, m), 7.65-7.83 s) | (2H, B)<br>2H, d).                                               | 1. 40-2. 19 (8H, m), 1. 2. 89 (ZH, d), 4. 03       | 37 (14H, m), 8.19 (7<br>2.10-2.40 (4H, m), 2<br>d), 5.10 (1H, br s),                       |
| 20          | NYR (                   | 1. 37-1. 60 (2H, B),<br>(2H, q), 5. 00 (1H,<br>(4H, B), 8. 02 (1H,         | 1. 20-1. 36 (2H, m), (4H, t), 3. 14 (4H, t), 6. 90-6. 93 (2H, m) | 5 C C.                                             | (, or .), 7. 06-7.<br>1. 20-1. 40 (2H, m), 7.<br>(4H, t), 4. 00 (2H, c).<br>3. 10 (1H, d). |
| 30          | x Melting<br>Point (°C) | - Noncrystal. I                                                            | 2 133-138 1<br>(                                                 | 1 118-123 1                                        | Noncrystal 1. line powder (                                                                |
| 35          | γι <b>Β</b>             | -<br>©                                                                     | , į                                                              |                                                    | (S) 21                                                                                     |
| A           | åe :                    |                                                                            |                                                                  |                                                    | [] A 7. C1                                                                                 |
| Sa Table 14 | Reference<br>Example    | 6-21 S                                                                     | 01-01                                                            | 10-11                                              | 10-12                                                                                      |

Reference Example 11-1

55

4-Bromo-3,4-dihydro-5-oxo-1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]-5H-benz[cd]indole
To a solution of 3,4-dihydro-5-oxo-1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]-5H-benz[cd]indole (11 g; 75% purity) in THF (80 ml) was slowly added phenyltrimethylammonium tribromide [7.15 g in THF (25 ml)] at -45°C.

The mixture was stirred from -45°C to room f imperature f r one hour and filtrated iff. The solution was concentrated and the residul was washed with the rito give the titled compound as pal a yellow powder (8.9 g).

Reference Example Compound 11-2 was synthesized as a same mannor with Reference Example 11-1.

### 5 Compound 11-2

4-Bromo-3,4-dihydro-6-methoxy-5-oxo-1-(p-toluenesulfonyl)-5H-benz[cd]indole

#### Reference Example 11-3

10

4-Azido-3,4-dihydro-5-oxo-1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]-5H-benz[cd]indole

To a solution of 4-bromo-3,4-dihydro-5-oxo-1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]-5H-benz[cd]indole

a in DMF (200 ml)) was added acetic acid (3,3 ml) followed by aqueous sodium azide [3,3 g in water (22

[11.9 g in DMF (200 ml)] was added acetic acid (3.3 ml) followed by aqueous sodium azide [3.3 g in water (22 ml)] at -25°C. The mixture was warmed to -10°C and stirred at -10°C for 30 min and poured into the ice-wat r. The precipitate was filtrated, washed with water, and dried to give the titled compound as a y llow powder (10.3 g).

Reference Example compound 11-4 was synthesized as same manner with Reference Example 11-3.

#### Comound 11-4:

20

4-Azido-3,4-dihydro-6-methoxy-5-oxo-1-(p-toluenesulfonyl)-5H-benz[cd]indole

#### Reference Example 11-5

4-Acetylamino-3,4-dihydro-5-oxo-1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]-5H-benz[cd]indol
The mixture of 4-Azido-3,4-dihydro-5-oxo-1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]-5H-benz[cd]indole
(10.3 g) and acetic anhydride (4.4 g) in THF (150 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% Pd-carbon (3 g) at room temperature for four hours. The catalyst was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was recrystalized from hexane/isopropyl ether to give the titled compound as a pale yellow powder (9.3 g).

Reference Example Compound 11-6 was synthesized as same manner with Reference example 11-5.

#### Compound 11-6:

4-Acetylamino-3,4-dihydro-6-methoxy-5-oxo-1-(p-toluenesulfonyl)-5H-benz[cd]indole

# Reference Example 11-7

1-[2,4,6-(Triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-(1'-acetylpiperidine}-5-one Sodium hydrode (0.6g, 60% purity) was washed with hexane and suspended in DMF (20 ml). 1,4-Dibromobutane was added followed by 4-acetylamino-3,4-dihydro-5-oxo-1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzen sulfonyl]-5H-benz[cd]indole [3.1 g in DMSO (10 ml)] at -13°C under the nitrogen stream. The mixture was stirred at 13°C for 5 minutes and at 0°C for 20 min. and then poured into the mixture of ice and 1N hydrogen chloride. The separated oil was extracted with ethyl acetate and the organic layer was washed with water, concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography and recrystalized from hexane/isopropyl ther t give the titled compound as a yellow powder (2.3 g).

Reference Example Compound 11-8 was synthesized as same manner with Reference Exampl 11-7

# Compound 11-8:

55

6-Methoxy-1-[p-toluenesulfonyl]spiro(benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H), 2'-(1'-acetylpiperidine))-5-one

# Reference Example 11-9

1-[2,4,6-(Triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H), 2'-piperidine}-5-one
The mixture of 1-[2,4,6-(triisopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H), 2'-(1'-acetylpiperidin }-5-one (1.9 g), conc. hydrogen chloride (8 ml), and ethanol (30 ml) was reflux d for 39 hours. The mixture was concentrated and treated with ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous-sodium hydrogen sulfate. The organic phase was separated, wash d with water, and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chroma-

tography and recrystalized from hexan to giv the titled compound as a pall yellow powder (1.4 g). Reference Example compound 11-10 was synth sized as sam manner with Reference Exampl

Compound 11-10:

6-Methoxy-1-[p-toluenesulfonyl]spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H), 2'-piperidine}-5-one

# Reference Example 11-11

Spiro{1H-benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H), 2'-piperidine}-5-one

1-[2,4,6-(Trilsopropyl)benzenesulfonyl]spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H), 2'-piperidine}-5-one (3.3 g) was refluxed with 1N-aqueous sodium hydroxide (25 ml) and methanol (120 ml) for 24 hours. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was washed with water to give the titled compound as a yellow powder (1.5 g).

Reference Example compound 11-12 was synthesized as same manner with Reference Exampl 11-9.

### Compound 11-12:

10

15

6-Methoxyspiro{1H-benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-piperidine}-5-one

# Reference Example 11-13

5-Hydroxyl-6-methoxy-1-(p-toluenesulfonyl)spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-piperidine} To a solution of 6-methoxy-1-[p-toluenesulfonyl]spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-piperidine}-5-one (0.73 g) in THF (15 ml) was added lithium aluminum hydride (0.14 g) as a portion wise manner at 0°C. The mixture was refluxed for 24 hours. The mixture was cooled and treated with water. The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography and recrystalized from isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate to give the titled

# Reference Example 11-14

6-Methoxy-1-(p-toluenesulfonyl)spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-piperidine}

To a solution of 5-hydroxyl-6-methoxy-1-(p-tc:uenesulfonyl)spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-piperidine} in trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) was added triethylsilane (6.5 ml) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was treated with ethyl acetate and water. The aqueous phase was basified with aqueous ammonia and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined extract was washed with water and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography to give the titled compound (0.55 g) as a pale brown powder.

# Reference Example 11-15

6-Methoxyspiro{1H-benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-piperidine}

The mixture of 6-methoxy-1-(p-toluenesulfonyl)spiro{benz[cd]indole-4(3H,5H),2'-piperidine} (0.55 g), methanol (15 ml), and 1N-aqueous sodium hydroxide (3 ml) was refluxed for 90 min. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was treated with ethyl acetate and water. The organic phase was washed with water and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography and recrystalized from acetone/isopropyl ether to give the titled compound (0.19 g) as a white powder.

The structural formulas, yield and NMR spectra of the above compounds are shown in Tables 15, 16 and 17.

| 10<br>15<br>20 |           | NWR (8,, CDC)a)      | 1.09, 1.12, 1.25 (each 6H, d), 2.82-3.03 (lH, m), 3.57 (lH, dd), 3.84 (lH, ddd), 4.07-4.28 (2H, m), 4.83, (lH, dd), 7.20 (2H, s), 7.39 (lH, s), 7.39 (lH, c), 7.71, 7.79 (each, lH, d) | 2.36. 3.97 (each. 3H, s), 3.46 (IH, dd), 4.72 (IH, dd), 7.01,<br>8.09 (each, 1H, d), 7.25, 7.75 (each 2H, d), 7.45 (IH, d) | 1.10 (12H, d), 1.25 (GH, d), 2.82-3.03 (1H, m), 3.15 (1H, ddd), 3.48 (1H, dd), 4.07-4.26 (2H, m), 4.47 (1H, dd), 7.20 (2H, s), 7.39 (1H, t), 7.73, 7.76 (each 1H, d) | 2.37. 3.98 (each 3H, s), 3.01 (1H, ddd), 3.33 (1H, dd), 4.35 (1H, dd), 7.00. 3.08 (each 1H, d), 7.25, 7.74 (each 2H, d), 7.37 (1H, s) | 1.08. 1.13. 1.26 (each GH, d), 2.12 (3H, s), 2.82-3.03 (1H, m), 2.82 (1H, dd), 3.96 (1H, dd), 4.07-4.28 (2H, m), 4.79-4.92 (1H, m), 6.72 (1H, br d), 7.21 (2H, s), 7.23 (1H, d), 7.36 (1H, t), 4.70 (1 | 2. 37<br>(1H.<br>(each |
|----------------|-----------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 30             | <b>~:</b> | Yield (%)            | 85                                                                                                                                                                                     | 001                                                                                                                        | 항 ·                                                                                                                                                                  | .001                                                                                                                                  | 88                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 79                     |
| 35             |           | ctual .              |                                                                                                                                                                                        | Wee Services                                                                                                               | N. SS.                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                       | SHAME OF THE PARTY |                        |
|                | e 15      | ce Structual Pormula |                                                                                                                                                                                        | Me-O-So <sub>2</sub>                                                                                                       | 1                                                                                                                                                                    | 0S-{Q}-8M                                                                                                                             | 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 's                     |
| 45             | Table     | Reference<br>Exemple | 1-11                                                                                                                                                                                   | 11-2                                                                                                                       | 11-3                                                                                                                                                                 | 11-4                                                                                                                                  | 9-1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 11-6                   |
| 50             |           |                      |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                      | *                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                        |

| 40                                    |                      | 40                                      | 35              | 30        | 25                                                                                      | 20                  | 15                                                           | 10              | 5                          |            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|------------|
|                                       | Table 16             | · .                                     |                 |           |                                                                                         |                     |                                                              |                 | • ,                        |            |
|                                       | Reference<br>Example | Structual<br>Formula                    |                 | Yield (%) |                                                                                         | NXR .               | HXR (4,,, CDC),                                              |                 |                            | 1          |
|                                       | 11-1                 |                                         | \<br> <br>      | 67        | 1. 08. 1. 11. 1.                                                                        | 25 (each 6II,       | 1.11. 1.25 (each 611, d), 1.52-1.90 (611, m), 2.14 (311, s). | 10 (6H, m).     | 2. 14 (3H, s).             | 1          |
|                                       |                      | ( <u>o</u> )                            |                 |           | 2.81-3.62 (1H, m), 3.20-3.58 (3H, m), 3.75-3.89 (1H, m), 4.08-                          | a), 3.20-3.         | 58 (3H, m), 3                                                | . 75-3.89 (1)   | H. m). 4.08-               | •          |
|                                       |                      | **************************************  | - ¥<br><b>≻</b> | ·         | 9.29 (ch. m.). 1.18 (ZK, s.), 7.23 (1K, d.), 7.33 (1K, t.), 7.60,<br>7.81 (each 1K, d.) | 7. 18 (2H, s)<br>d) | . 7.23 (IH, d                                                | ). 7.33 (JII    | . t), 7.60,                |            |
|                                       | 11-8                 | ر<br>الم                                | <u>~</u>        | 74        | 1. 54-1.84 (6M, m), 2.09, 2.37, 3.94 (each 3H, s), 3.13 (1H, d),                        | m), 2.09, 2.        | . 37, 3.94 (ea                                               | ch 3H, s),      | 3. 13 (1H, d).             |            |
|                                       |                      | ١                                       | Š               |           | 3.31-3.58 (2H, m). 3.65-3.80 (1H, m). 6.96, 8.01 (each 1H, d).                          | m), 3.65-3.         | 80 (1H, m), 6                                                | . 98, 8.01 (    | each 111, d),              |            |
|                                       |                      | W. OS-O, W                              | ¥<br>ì          |           | 35. 11 :                                                                                |                     | . co (18, 5)                                                 |                 |                            |            |
|                                       | - 11-9               |                                         | <b>6</b>        | 100       | 1.08, 1.11, 1.25 (each 6H, d), 1.40-1.90 (6H, m), 2.80-3.11                             | 25 (each 6H,        | d). 1.40-1.9                                                 | 0 (6K, m),      | 2.80-3.11                  |            |
|                                       |                      | ( <u>ن</u><br>ر                         | Š               |           | (4H, m), 3.53 (1H, d), 4.09-4.29 (2H, m), 7.19 (2H, s), 7.28                            | (1H, d), 4.0%       | 9-4.29 (2H, m                                                | ), 7. 19 (2H    | s), 7.28                   |            |
|                                       |                      | * ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° ° | #<br>**         | •         | (1H, d), 7,36                                                                           | (JH, t), 7.6l       | (IH, t), 7.66, 7.70 (each III, d)                            | III, d)         |                            |            |
|                                       | 11-10                | Neo Neo                                 | <b>\</b>        | 8         | 1 35-1 83 (6H m) 2 36 3 06 (2 H8 4200)                                                  | 2 9 C (m            | DG (each 2H                                                  | 61 9 72.9       | (T 81) 00                  |            |
|                                       |                      | <b>©</b>                                | \<br>\{\}       | 3         | 2.91, 3.35 (each III, d), 2.91–3.30 (III, n), 6.98, 8.01 (each III,                     | ch III. d). 2.      | 91-3.30 (111.                                                | a). 6.98. 5     | 30 (In. m/).               |            |
|                                       | . *                  | (-N, 603-(O)-1                          | Ξ               |           | d), 7.24, 7.74 (each 2H, d), 7.34 (IH, s)                                               | (each 2H, d)        | , 7.34 (1H. s                                                | (s              |                            | _          |
|                                       | 11-11                | )                                       | <b>(</b>        | ë         | 1 00 1 62 778                                                                           |                     | . 1 1107 6                                                   |                 |                            |            |
|                                       | :                    | ත්                                      |                 | 3         | 3 44 (pach 14 d) 7 93 (11 t) 7 90 (111 c) 7 39 7 50                                     | 4) 7 23 CH          | 0 (2n. m). J.                                                | 13 - 1. 65 (28) | 1, 117, 2, 33,<br>1, 7, 52 |            |
|                                       |                      | HA                                      | ×               |           | (each 1H, d), 11.06 (1H, br s)                                                          | 11.06 (1H, br       | s) (s                                                        | /s              |                            | •          |
|                                       | - !                  | 0°-(                                    | ~               |           |                                                                                         |                     |                                                              |                 |                            |            |
|                                       | 11-12                | <u></u>                                 | Š               | 94        | 1.23-1.65 (611, m), 2.60-2.77 (1H, m), 2.84, 3.30 (each 1H, d),                         |                     | 7 (18, 11), 2.                                               | 84, 3.30 (e     | ach 1H, d).                |            |
| 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |                      | H                                       | H               | * .       | 2. 79-2. 91 (111.                                                                       |                     | m), 3.82 (311, s), 6.90, 7.51 (each 111, d), 7.24            | 7.51 (each 1    | H, d), 7.24                | : - 1      |
|                                       |                      | Me0                                     |                 |           | (1H, s)                                                                                 |                     |                                                              |                 |                            |            |
|                                       | 11-13                | <u>o</u>                                | Ţ<br>Ž          | 8         | 1.38-1.95 (611, m), 2.34, 3.82 (each 311, s), 2.63 (211, t), 2.73                       | m), 2, 34, 3,       | 82 (each 311.                                                | s), 2.63 (2     | H. O. 2.73.                | ٠,         |
|                                       |                      | ¥, 609 (O) •1,                          | :<br>:          |           | . 2.92 (each 111, d), 4.96 (111, s), 6.90, 7.77 (each 111, d), 7.20,                    | d). 4.96 (1H,       | , s), 6.90, 7                                                | . 77 (each ]    | H. d). 7.20.               |            |
| なる 一番 大き                              |                      |                                         |                 |           | 7.73 (each 2H,                                                                          | d). 7.22 (111,      | (S)                                                          | ではなる。           |                            | <i>i</i> . |
|                                       |                      | Water Land Browning                     |                 |           |                                                                                         |                     |                                                              | 中心和其中的特         | SANTAN ASTOR TO            | <u> </u>   |

|        | ••       |                      | d), 2.65-<br>ch 18, d),                                                                                                                                                 | . 78, 7.04                                                                                |
|--------|----------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | ٠.       |                      | , s), 2.61 (211,<br>6.88, 7.65 (ea                                                                                                                                      | 3.75 (311, s), G                                                                          |
|        |          | NWR (6,5m, CDC13)    | 3.83 (each 3ll<br>3 (each 1H, d),<br>7.17 (1H, s)                                                                                                                       | -2.83 (6H, m),<br>s)                                                                      |
|        |          | X                    | 1.42-1.73 (6ll. m), 2.33, 3.83 (each 3ll, s), 2.61 (2ll, d), 2.65-2.74 (2H, m), 2.84, 3.13 (each 1H, d), 6.88, 7.65 (each 1H, d), 7.18, 7.72 (each 2H, d), 7.17 (1H, s) | 1.30-1.58 (6H, m), 2.60-2.83 (6H, m), 3.75 (3H, s), 6.78, 7.04 (each 1H, d), 6.94 (1H, s) |
|        |          | Yield (%)            | 82                                                                                                                                                                      | 53                                                                                        |
|        |          | Structual<br>Formula | 14 Ooks                                                                                                                                                                 | OWe<br>HN—H                                                                               |
| -<br>- | Table 17 | Reference<br>Example | 11-14                                                                                                                                                                   | 11-15                                                                                     |

# Example I-1

25

4-Phenyl-4-[2-(1-Imidazolyl)ethyl]isochroman hydrochloride

A mixture of synthesized 4-(2-lodoethyl)-4-phenylisochrqman (0.6 g) and imidazole (0.56 g) was heated in acetonitrile (15 ml) in the presence of potassium carbonate (0.34 g) at 60°C with stirring for 4 days. The reaction mixture was then poured in ice-water and the syrup separating out was extracted with other. The extract was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (thyl acetate-methanol = 15:1) and treated with 4NHCI/methanol to provide the title compound (0.32 g) as non-crystalline powder.

#### Example I-3

4-Phenyl-4-[2-(phthalimido)ethyl]isochroman

A mixture of synthesized 4-(2-iodoethyl)-4-phenylisochroman (0. 5 g) and potassium phthalimid (0.51 g) was heated in DMF (10 ml) at 60°C with stirring for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was then poured in ice-water and the syrup separating out was extracted with thyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silical gill column chromatography and recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to provide the title compound (0.12 g) as coloriless needless.

The following compounds I-2 and I-4 ~ 70 were synthesized in the same manner as Example I-1 and I-3.

Compounds of Examples I-1 through I-70

Example I-2

4-[2-(Morpholino)ethyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

Example I-4

4-[2-(Benzylamino)ethyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

Example I-5

4-[2-(m-Methoxybenzylamino)ethyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

25 Example I-6

4-[2-(4-Phenylpiaerazin-1-yl)ethyl]-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

30 Example I-7

35

4-{2-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl}-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

Example I-8

4-{2-[4-(m-Chlorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl}-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

Example I-9

4-{2-[4-(2-Pyridyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl}-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

Example I-10

4-[2-(4-Benzylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl]-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

Example I-11

4-[2-(4-Phenylpiperidino)ethyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

50 Example I-12

3,4-Dihydro-1'-[2-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)ethyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

Example I-13

3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-1'-[2-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)ethyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

|            |               |                      | •              |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | " 对外的 次是          |
|------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
|            | Example I-14  |                      |                |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
|            | 4-[3-(1-lmic  | iazolyl)propyl]-4-ph | nylis chrom    | an hydroc    | hioride                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                   |
|            |               |                      | •              |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
|            | Example I-15  |                      |                |              | residente de la companya de la comp<br>La companya de la co |                   |
|            | 4-[3-(1-Hex   | (amethyleneimino)    | propyl]-4-pher | nylisochror  | nan hydrochlor                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | ide               |
| 40         | Example I-16  |                      | •              | •            | i de Africa de                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                   |
| 10         | 4-[3-(1,2,4,  | 5-Tetrahydro-3H-be   | enzazepin-3-y  | /l)propyl]-4 | -phenylisochro                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | man hydrochloride |
|            | Example I-17  |                      |                |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
| 15         | 4-(3-Anilino  | propyl)-4-phenylise  | ochroman hyd   | irochloride  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
|            | Example I-18  |                      |                |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
|            | 4-[3-(Benzy   | łamino)propyl]-4-pl  | henylisochron  | nan hydrod   | chloride                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                   |
| 20         | Example I-19  |                      | •              | 0            | e <del>n Me</del> ropologia.<br>Salah                                                                                                                                                                                            |                   |
|            | 4-[3-(o-Fluo  | orobenzylamino)pro   | pyl]-4-phenyl  | isochroma    | n hydrochlorid                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                   |
| 25         | Examle I-20   | ·<br>· .             |                |              | <i>.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                   |
|            | 4-[3-(o-Chic  | probenzylamino)pro   | pyi]-4-phenyi  | isochroma    | ın hydrochlorid                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
| 30         | Example I-21  |                      |                |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
| <i>3</i> 0 | 4-[3-(N-Met   | hylbenzylamino)pro   | opyl]-4-pheny  | lisochroma   | an hydrochlorid                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
|            | Example I-22  |                      |                |              | •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                   |
| 35         | 4-{3-[(2-Thi  | enylmethyl)amino]p   | ropyl}-4-pher  | nylisochro   | man hydrochlor                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | ide               |
|            | Example I-23  | •                    | • . •          | •            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
| 40         | 4-[3-(2-Pico  | lylamino)propyl]-4-  | phenylisochro  | man dihye    | drochloride                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                   |
| 40 .       | Example I-24  |                      |                | ٠.           | V.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                   |
|            | 4-[3-(β-Phe   | nethylamino)propylj  | -4-phenyliso   | chroman h    | ydrochloride                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                   |
| 45         | Example I-25  |                      |                |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
|            | 4-[3-(3,4-Dia | methoxyphenethyla    | ımino)propyi]- | 4-phenylis   | sochroman hyd                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | rochloride        |
| 50         | Example 1-26  | \$ .                 |                |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |
|            | 4-{3-[2-(2-P  | yridyl)ethylamino]p  | ropyl)-4-phen  | ylisochron   | nan dihydrochlo                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | oride             |

4-{3-[2-(Morpholino)ethylamino]propyl]-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

Example 1-27

### Example I-28

4-[3-(2-Indanylamino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochlorid

# 5 Example I-29

4-[3-(4-Phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

# Example I-30

10

4-{3-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

# Example I-31

4-{3-[4-(2-Benzothiazolyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

# Example I-32

4-{3-[4-(3-Benzoisothiazolyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

# Example I-33

4-[3-(4-Phenylpiperidino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

# 25 Example I-34

4-{3-[4-(Piperidino)piperidino]propyl}-4-phenylisochroman dihydrochloride

#### Example I-35

30

15

3,4-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

# Example I-36

35 3,4-Dihydro-6-methoxy-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine]

# Example I-37

40 3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

# Example I-38

45 4-[3-(Benzylamino)propyl]-4-(p-fluorophenyl)isochroman hydrochloride

# Example I-39

4-{3-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-4-(p-fluorophenyl)isochroman dihydrochloride

# Example I-40

4-[3-(Benzylamino)propyl]-4-(p-chlorophenyl)isochroman hydrochloride

### 55 Example I-41

4-{3-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-4-(p-chlorophenyl)isochroman dihydrochloride

### Exampl I-42

4-(3-[4-(2-Benz thiazolyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl)-4-(p-chl rophenyl)isochroman trihydrochloride

### 5 Example I-43

4-[3-(Benzylamino)propyi]-7-chloro-4-(p-chlorophenyi)isochroman hydrochloride

# Example I-44

10

25

35

4-{3-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-7-chloro-4-(p-chlorophenyl)isochroman dihydrochloride

### Example I-45

·

Methyl  $\alpha$ -[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propylamino]-m-toluate hydrochloride

# Example I-46

4-[3-(m-Methylbenzylamino)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

# Example I-47

6,7-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[4-oxobenzo(b)thiophene-5(4H),2'-piperidine]

# Example I-48

3,4-Dihydro-6-methoxy-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[1-oxonaphthalene-2-(1H),2'-piperidine]

# Example I-49

3,4-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-y-)propyl]spiro[1-oxonaphthalene-2(1H),2'-piperidin ] hydro-

# Example I-50

3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-1'-{3-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)isochroman-4-yl]propyl}spiro[naphthalene-2(1H), 2'-piperidine] hydrochloride

# Example I-51

4-Phenyl-4-{3-[1-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthylamino)]propyl]isochroman hydrochloride

# 45 Example I-52

3,4-Dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-1'-[4-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)butyl]spiro[naphthalene-2(1H),2'-plperidine]

# 50 Example I-53

6,7-Dihydro-1'-[3-(4-phenylisochroman-4-yl)propyl]spiro[benzo[b]thiophene-5(4H),2'-piperidine hydro-chloride

# 55 Example I-54

4-(3-[N-Methyl-N-2-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyloxy)ethyl)amino]propyl}-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

Example I-55

|           | 4-{3-[(2-Biph                       | enylmethyl)amin                          | ]propyl}-   | 4-phenyli  | sochrom    | an hydrochl   | oride         |                                                    |                     |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------|------------|------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 5         | Example I-56                        | in the second                            |             |            |            |               |               |                                                    | などが                 |
|           | 4-{3-[3,4-Din                       | nethoxyphenyl)ur                         | eido]prop   | yl}-4-phe  | nylisochr  | oman          |               |                                                    |                     |
|           | Example I-57                        |                                          |             |            |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |
| 10        | 1'-[3-(4-Pher                       | nylisochroman-4-                         | yl)propyl]s | spiro{1H-  | benz[cd]i  | indole-4(3H   | ,5H), 2'-pipe | oridine)-5-one hy                                  | /dn                 |
|           |                                     |                                          |             |            |            |               |               |                                                    | 他                   |
| 15        | Example I-58                        |                                          | · .         |            |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |
|           | 6-Methoxy-1<br>one hydrochloride    | '-[3-(4-phenylisod                       | :hroman-4   | l-yl)propy | /i]spiro{1 | H-benz[cd]i   | ndole-4(3H,   | 5H), 2'-piperidine                                 | <b>}-</b> !         |
| 20        | Example I-59                        | •                                        |             |            |            | 4.7           |               |                                                    | 李金                  |
|           | 6-Methoxy-1<br>drochloride          | '-[3-(4-phenylisod                       | :hroman-4   | l-yl)propy | /i]spiro{1 | H-benz[cd]i   | ndole-4(3H,   | 5H), 2'-piperizin                                  | i}h                 |
| 25        | Example I-60                        |                                          |             |            |            |               | <b>i</b>      |                                                    |                     |
|           | 4-[3-(6,7-dim                       | ethoxy-1,2,3,4-te                        | trahydroi   | soquinoli  | n-2-ylpro  | pyl]-4-phen   | ylisochroma   | n hydrochloride                                    |                     |
|           | Example I-61                        | •                                        |             | `          |            | #**           |               |                                                    | 1)<br>34.7<br>1)    |
| <b>30</b> | 4-{3-[4-(2-Ox                       | coindolin-3-yl)pipe                      | eridino]pro | opyl}-4-pl | nenylisod  | hroman        |               |                                                    |                     |
|           | Example I-62                        |                                          |             |            |            | •             |               |                                                    |                     |
| 35        | 4-[3-(Benzyla                       | amino)propyl]-4-(2                       | 2-pyridyl)i | sochrom    | an hydro   | chloride      |               |                                                    |                     |
| •         | Example I-63                        |                                          |             |            |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |
|           | 4-[3-(Isoindol                      | lin-2-yl)propyl]-4-                      | phenyliso   | chroman    | hydroch    | loride        |               |                                                    | ili.<br>Mil.<br>Med |
| 40        | Example I-64                        | 12                                       |             |            |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |
|           | 4-[3-Benzylar                       | mino)propyl]-4-(b                        | enzothiaz   | olyl)isoci | nroman h   | nydrochlorid  | 0             |                                                    |                     |
| 45        | Example I-65                        | Y                                        |             |            |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |
|           | 3,4-dihydro-1<br>dine;hydrochloride | '-[3-(6,7-dimetho                        | xy-4-phe    | nylisochn  | oman-4-y   | /l)propyl]spi | ro[naphthale  | ne-2(1H), 2'-pi                                    | pei                 |
| 50        | Example I-66                        | 1.5<br>2.                                |             |            |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |
|           | 4-{3-[(2-naph                       | thyimethyi)amino                         | ]propyl}-4  | l-phenyli: | sochroma   | an hydrochlo  | oride         | 。 對 的 <b>是</b> 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 |                     |
|           | Example I-67                        |                                          | ,           |            |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |
| 55        | 4-Phenyl-4-{3                       | 3-[3-(3,4,5-trimet                       | hoxyphen    | yl)propio  | nylamino   | ]propyl}!soc  | hroman        |                                                    |                     |
|           | •                                   | en e | :           | e design   |            |               |               |                                                    |                     |

# Exampl I-68

4-[3-(8,9-dimethoxy-6,6-dimethyl-3-benzazocin-3-yl)propyl]-4-phenylisochroman hydrochloride

# 5 Example I-69

10

15

25

4-[3-(N-Acetyl-benzylamino)propyl]-4-(benzothiazolyl)isochroman

# Example I-70

4-{3-[2-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-7-methoxynaphthyl) amino]propyl}-4-phenylisochroman hydrochlorid
The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown in
Tables 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27 and 28.

| 5<br>10<br>15<br>20 |                                      | NYR (1994, CDCl.) Elemental Analysis [Found/Celculated)] | (1H. ddd), 2.82<br>ddd), 3.89 (1H.           | (JH, ddd), 4:91 (2H, s), 6.70- (69.01 6.37<br>(12H, m).<br>2.55 (8H, m), 3.69 (4H, t), 3.92 C <sub>2.1</sub> H <sub>28</sub> NO <sub>2.</sub> HCl-3/ | s). 4.86 (2H. s). 6.93-7.07 (2H. 10-7.34 (7H. m) | -2.70 (2H, a), 3.57-3.91 (2H, m), C <sub>25</sub> H <sub>21</sub> NO <sub>3</sub><br>(2H, q), 4.90 (2H, s), 7.00-7.11 77.72 5.42 | B), 7. 12-7. 39 (6H, H), 7. 63-7. 90  (1H hr s) 2 20 2 20 7 /// 2 | (Z#, | 92-7. 34<br>(18, br s          | 72. 44 6. 94<br>(72. 61 6. 92           | 2. 23-2. 51 (8H, m), 3. 19 (4H, t), 3. 94 C17H30N2O-2HC1 (2H, s), 4. 87 (2H, s), 6. 79-7. 08 (5H, 68. 53 6. 98 5. 81 | . 30 (9fi.<br>(8fi. ■).            | 67. 94 6. 60<br>(67. 81 6. 91 |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 30<br>35            | (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>n</sub> - R' | <pre>B X Melting Point (°C)</pre>                        | 2 1 Noncrystal. 2.58 (<br>line powder (1R, d | 4, 22 (<br>7, 40 (<br>2 1 187-190 2, 19-2                                                                                                            | (2ii.                                            | <b>γ</b> ~                                                                                                                       | (2H, B)<br>(5H, B)<br>2 1 182-185 1 41 C                          | 3.70 | s). 6.5<br>2 1 165-167 1.42 (1 |                                         | . 2 238-240 2.23-2.<br>(2H, s)                                                                                       | a), 7.09-7,<br>1 234-237 2.25-2.63 | (2H, s)<br>(13H, m            |
| 40<br>15            | R. Ar                                | R° Ar                                                    | (i)                                          | (O)                                                                                                                                                  | ,                                                | (i)                                                                                                                              | (                                                                 |      |                                |                                         | ,<br>(i)                                                                                                             |                                    |                               |
| 50                  | Table 18                             | Example R'                                               | Ę.                                           | 1-2                                                                                                                                                  |                                                  |                                                                                                                                  | I-4 -KHGR C                                                       |      | I-5 -NBCRFO                    | Z ( , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , |                                                                                                                      |                                    |                               |

; ! : : : : :

									٠.			•	
5		Elemental Analysis [Found(Celculated)]	C <sub>27</sub> H <sub>29</sub> ClN <sub>2</sub> O·HCl 68.97 6.47 5.86	(69.08 6.44 5.97) C <sub>3.0</sub> H <sub>3.0</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O-2HC1-1/2H <sub>3</sub> O 65.12 6.88 8.95		CsellszNsO-2llCl 69.04 7.20 - 5.92	7.06 FC1-1/	76.82 7.37 3.25 (76.85 7.46 3.20)	Cs.HasNO-HCI-2HaO 72.81 7.62 2.38	7. 90 • HC1 · 5/	68. 44 7. 83 2. 42 (68. 36 7. 21 2. 51)	C.1H.1N.0-HC1-5/4H.0	67. 11 6. 66 7. 46 (66. 83 6. 81 7. 42)
15		(100)	55 (4H, t), 3.18 4.87 (2H, s),	6.95-7.36 (10H, m) 3.53 (4H, t), 3.94 s), 6.59 (1H, d),	7.07 (2H, m), 7.40-7.50 (1H, m),	3. 49 (2H, s), 3. 93 s), 6. 93-7. 31 (14H,	2. 21-2. 50 (5H, .),	3.95 (2H, s), 4.87 (2H, w), 7.10-7.35	(10H, m), 2, 10-2, 80 (10H, m) s), 4, 87 (2H, s), 6, 90-7, 30	2.10-2.72 (10H, 11),	, s), 3.92 (2H, (1H, d), 6.54	(9H, m) 3.85 (2H, s), 3.89	6. 85 (2H, m). 3 (1H, s).
<b>20</b>		(1)	(2H,		6.95-	4.85 (2H, s), 3.	<u>.</u>	. 03 . 03	10H. M. 2. 10 1. 4.87 (2H,	<b>~</b>	3.82 s). (s	-7.30 (9) 3.8	(ZH. S).
25		NXR	1 m	5. 89 9. 60 1. 4	62 (1H. 08-7.34 15-8.19	2. 18-2. 58 ( (2H. s), 4. 8	m). 1. 71-2. 09 (6H.	2. 99-3. 10 (2H, (2H, s), 6. 97-1 (12H, b)	1. 80 (2H.		3.80 (3H, s), s), 4.82 (2H,	. 8 . 9	(ZH, t), 4.87 7.00-7.30 (9H,
30		Meling Point (°C)	221-224	195-198		230-232	222-226		Noncrystal. line powder	Noncrystal.	·	Noncrystal. 1	~ [-]
35		×	2 1	2		7	2 1		<b>6</b>	2 1		. m	
40		γr	0	0	(		0	(	9	0	) .	0	
45		ν. O	= _ 5	=	:		H (	1	<u> </u>	. <b>E</b> SS	oct.	<b>33</b>	
50	19	À		- - - - - - - - - -	ָּנָ ֖֓֞֞֞֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓֓		\(\frac{1}{2}\)	)   	Ž	\ \ \	<u>5</u>	Q	が建立後
~	Table 1	Ехящрје	80 -1	I-9	1-19		I-11	:	21-13	I-13	<b>z-</b>	1-14	

	•							100		
5	٠, .	Elemental Analysis	HC1-2H <sub>2</sub> 0 8. 08 3. 30	8. 60 3. 32) HC1-3/4H, 0	````o		ന്ന് <sub>(</sub>	_	30 3.16) 30 3.16) 1·H <sub>2</sub> 0 50 3.24	57 3.29)  3.29)  3.29)  3.3.581  3.41)
10		Elemental Anal	C2 H NO-HC1 - 2H 2O C2 (H 1 1 NO-HC1 - 2H 2O 68. 09 8. 08 3	(68.31 C3.H3,NO.	ė		(75.35 7.21 CrslleFNO-IIC1	22	<b>.</b>	C13.31 7.57 3.29 C1.14.140S-HC1-3/5H120 67.13 6.59 3.15 (67.24 6.67 3.41)
15	•		7 (2H, dt), br s), 3.92	6. 90-7. 30 (2H. dt), 2. 46 2. 89 (4H. dA)	6.90-	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	II, ZII, 2), 17 (2II, 2), 3 90 (2U	\$ <del>6</del> 8	S. S.	6. 90-7. 30 dt), 2. 66 (2H. s),
20		(*[])	E), 2. 1	(ZH, S), 2, 20 (4H, dd),	2. 28 2. 29	(14H,	2. 09-2	2. 23 2. 23 3). 3	2. 12 C. 12	4.86 (2H, s). (m), 2.23 (2H, (2H, s), 3.94 (6.80-7.30 (12H.
25	•	MKR (Joon.	19 -	(9H, m) (9H, m) 1. 40-1. 60 (2H, (2H, t), 2. 56		s). 6.50- -1.60 (2H. t). 3.74	(2H, s), 1. 62 (2H, (2H, t),	86 (2H. . 60 (2H. ). 3.83	(2H, s), 6 -1.60 (2H, dt), 2.36	(2H, s), 1. 60 (2H, t), 3. 91 (2H, s),
30		Melting Point (°C)	Noncrystal 1. line powder 2.	(9 Noncrystal. 1. Iine powder (2	Noncrystal. 1. line powder 3.	(2H, Noncrystal, 1, 40 line powder (2H,	4.87 Noncrystal. 1.39- line powder 2.62	S), 4. Noncrystal. 1.40-1 line powder 1.40-1 (2H, t	4.87 Noncrystal 1.40- line powder (2H,	3.91 ( 144, Noncrystal. 1.40-1. line powder (2H, t.
35		×	ه 1	3 1		es	 	 	 	E III
40		γĽ	0	0	0	0	0		0	0
		P.	<b>=</b>	<b>≈</b>		<b>=</b>	=	==	=	=
45	20	À	<b>←</b>			-NBCHz(O)	$\text{Afficial}_{\vec{I}}$	WIGHT CO.	2 0 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	-NBC4 (S)
50	Table 20	Example	i-15	I-16	1-17	I-18	I-19	I-20	I-21	1-22

10 ·

Table 21 '	,			•
Example R' R'	γr	K H	Melting NWR (1,,,, CDC1,) Point (°C)	Elemental Analysis [Found/Celculeted)]
I-23 -инси <sub>2</sub> (NO) H	0	3 8	1. 24 (2H. dt). 2. 67 (2H. s), 3. 91 (2H. s). 4. 86 7. 30 (11H. B). 7. 63 (1H.	Cz,II,4N,0.2HC1.1/2II,0 .65.59 6.37 6.52 (65.45 6.63 6.36)
. I-24 -ин(си2)2-О Н	0	es —	dt), 8.54 (1H. m). Noncrystal. 1.35-1.63 (2H. m), 2.04-2.32 (2H. m), line powder 2.61 (2H. t), 2.72-2.90 (4H. m), 3.89 (2H, q), 4.86 (2H, s), 6.92-7.35 (14H,	CreH: NO RC1 · 1/2H: 0 75.03 7.55 3.56 (74.89 7.49 3.36)
I-25-инсн <sub>з</sub> у-СО осн <sub>з</sub> н	0	<b>™</b>	) (2H, m), 2.18 (2H, dt), t). 2.70-2.90 (4H, m), 3.85 3.90 (2H, s), 4.85 (2H, s)	7. 39
І-26 -нн (сн2)2 (М) Н	0		6. 70-7.30 (12H, m). Noncrystal- 1. 49 (2H, m), 2. 19 (2H, dt), 2. 65 line powder (2H, t), 2. 97 (4H, t), 3. 90 (2H, s),	
I-27 -мн(сн2)2-м О н	0	3	(1H, dt), 8.51 (1H dt). 1.60 (2H, m), 2.21 (2H, dt), 2.44 m), 2.63 (4H, m), 3.68 (4H, t), (2H, s), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.90-7.30	02-2HCI-
I-28 -NH (1) II	0	ъ 1	(2H, m), 2.22 (2H, dt), 2.60 l, m), 3.23 (2H, dd), 3.58(1H, (2H, s), 4.86 (2H, s), 6.90-	C <sub>27</sub> H <sub>29</sub> NO·HCl·1/2H <sub>2</sub> O 75.28 7.46 3.10 (75.59 7.28 3.26)
1000年の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の日本の			7.30 (13Н, в.).	

5	Elemental Analysis (Found/Calculated)) C H N	C1141140-2HC1 69.27 7.06 5.77	r. 93 N.O. 2HC1 · 6. 51	(65. 62 6. 69 5. 47)  Cs. Hs. 1N, OS. 2HC1 · 4/5H, 0  62. 57 6. 20 7. 87  (62. 53. 6. 26 7. 54)	6. 32 6. 69	)-HC1-9/1	7. 77 20 - 2HCJ 8. 38	(66.80 8.62 5.99) C <sub>3.113,1</sub> NO-IIC1·7/4H <sub>2</sub> 0 73.99 8.00 2.32 (73.96 8.05 2.69)
15	1,0	2. 23 (2H, m), (4H, t), 3. 18 (4H,	£ 25.	4. 88 (2H, s). 5. 80- 2. 22 (2H, dt), (4H, t), 3. 63 (4H, 4. 89 (2H, s), 6. 90-	2. 25 (2H. dt), 2. 42 dd), 3. 54 (4H. t), (2H. s), 7. 00-7. 50		a), 2.56 (4H, t), 3.91 (2H, s), 4.87	7.30 (9H, m). (m), 2.10-2.90 (10H, m) 4.87 (2H, s), 6.90-7.30
25	NYR (4,,, CDC1,	0-1.60 (2H, ■). 9 (2H, t), 2.54	3. 33 (2n, 5), 0 (14H, m). 0-1. 60 (2H, m), 19 (2H, t), 2. 53	, 3.92 (2H, s), 30 (13H, m). 40-1, 70 (2H, m), 39 (2H, t), 2.50	0 (14H, m). 0-1.70 (2H, m). t), 2.60 (4H, s).	50 (13H,). 2H, s), 4.88	7.30 (14H, m). 1.40-2.40 (23H, m), 2.56 (4H, 1 2.92 (2H, br d), 3.91 (2H, s).	(2H, s), 6.90-7.30 (9H, m). 1.30-2.00 (10H, m), 2.10-2.90 3.91 (2H, dd), 4.87 (2H, s). (13H, m).
30	n Melting Point (°C)	2 119-121	7.3 7.3 3 2 122–124 1.4 2.3	t) 7. 3. 2. 152–154 1. 2.	7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7	Noncrystal- 1. line powder 3.	7. 3 2 265–267 1. 2	3 1 Noncrystal. 1 line powder 3
40	Ar H				· · ·	) (6		
<b>45</b>	R,		# 7 OF		# ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) (			- O
S Table 22	Example	1-29	-30	<b>.</b> -3	[-32	, E-1	풁	ro.

. 5		Elemental Analysis	C <sub>5.5</sub> H <sub>5.NO<sub>2</sub>-HCl-3/4H<sub>5</sub>O 74.62 7.66 2.86 (74.55 7.87 2.63)</sub>	Cs, H41HOs - HCI - 9/10H, 0 72.76 7.57 2.61 (72.35 7.82 2.48)	C*sH*eFNO·HCl·3/4H*O		6.34 5.21) 5.81-11.0		(61.37 6.25 5.11) C <sub>2.6</sub> H <sub>3.0</sub> C1H <sub>3</sub> OS-3HCl·1/4H <sub>2</sub> 56.28 5.73 6.70 (56.36 5.46 6.80)
10		Elemen [Found/C					. 5	_0 .	(61.37 ( C, H, CIN, C 56.28 5 (56.36 5
15			2. 10-2. 80 (10H, m). 1H. d), 3. 92 (1H, 64 (2H, m), 6. 90-	2.10-2.90 (10H, m), 85 (GHx2/7, s), (2H, s), 6.55 (2Hx 77 s) 6.06.7 20	2. 19 (2H, dt). 2. 62 s), 3. 87 (2H, s),		4.87 (2H, s), 6.80- 2.18 (2H, dt), 2.62 3) 3.87 (2H, s)	(13H, m). (2H, m). t). 3.10 (4H,	s), 6.80- 3.62 (411, s), 6.90-
20		CDC1*)	4. m). 2. 10-2. 80 () 3. 91 (1H. d), 3. 95 s), 6. 64 (2H, m),	(10H, m). 2.00 (10H, m), 2.10-2.90 (10H, 16Hx5/7, s), 3.85 (6Hx2/7, s), (2H, d), 4.88 (2H, s), 6.55 (2H, s), 6.58 (2Hx5/7, s), 6.0-7.20	**************************************	6.90-7.30 (12H, a), 2.20 (2H, a), 2.53 (4H, t), 3.	s), 4.87 (2ff, s), 6. m), 2.18 (2ff, dt), (2ff, s), 3.87 (2ff, dt),	2. 20 C. 20	2. 21 (2H, (4H, t). (2H, t). (2H, t).
25		NYR (6pp.	S G H	(10H, m).  -2.00 (10H, 6.57, (2H, d), 6.58	E). -1. 60 (2H, t), 3. 74	(2H. s). 1. 60 (2H, (2H, t).	(12H, m), (12H, m), 1. 60 (2H,	(2H, s). 1. 60 (2H, (2H, t).	3. 89 (20. (120, a). 1. 60 (20, (20, c). (20, 20, (100, a).
30		Meling Point (°C)	Noncrystal. 1.30 line powder 3.7. d	7. 30 Noncrystal. 1. 30- line powder 3. 83 3. 91 2.7.	(9H, Noncrystal. 1. 40 line powder (2H,	4.85 ( 112-115 1.40-1 2.41 (	t), 3. 7.30 ( Noncrystal, 1.30-1 line powder (21, t	없 수 だ	D. 3 7.30 7.30 7.30 2.37 2.37 0.3
35		E .	en .	3 -		20 80		2	
40		Ar	0	0	<b>Ö</b>	(O)		O CI	
45	İ	e a		O (O)	<b>=</b>	Π H (O)	<b>=</b>	. ∓( <u>O</u> )	
50	Table 23	Example R'		\	8 -MGH.	Ţ	-MBC42	Ş	
55	Tat	Exa	1–36 1	I-37	I-38	I-39	1-40	7	7.

55		45 50		40	35		30	25	20	 15	10	5		
	Table 24	. 24	•						·				•	
	Example	. F.	oc Oc	γι	-	×	Melting Point (°C)	NYR (dyen,	(FIDG)		Elemer (Pound)	Elemental Analysis Pound(Calculated)) C H N	llysis	4
	1-43	-NBCH-	7-61	9	m		Noncrystal. 1 line powder	1.30-1.60 (2H, m). (2H, t), 3.74 (2H,	i, ■), 2.16 (2H, dt) (2H, s), 3.84 (2H,	2H. dt), 2.62 34 (2H. s),	C <sub>25</sub> H <sub>25</sub> C1 <sub>2</sub> NO·HC1·H <sub>2</sub> O 62.73 5.82 2.69	1 <sub>2</sub> NO·HC 5.82	2.69	1
	I-44		7-C1	(O)	က	2	122-125	1.30-1.60 (2H, s), 6	3. 85-7. 30 ■). 2. 18	(12H, m). (2H, m).	(62.45 5:87 2. C11H11C12FN10-2HC1	5:87 2FN:0-21	2.91) IIC1 4.67	
		. <i>:</i>		)				t), 3.86 (2H, 7), 7.30 (11H, 11)	s). 4. 82	(2H, s), 6.80-	36. 88 (58. 76	5. 46	4. 89)	
٠.	1-45	- NHCH1 - (O)	<b>=</b>	0	m		71-76			2.08-2.37 (2H. m), 3.90. 4.86 (2H each,	C27H1,NO, HC1.4/5H10	5. HC1-4 6. 56	/5H10 3.01	
		<b>8</b>	<b>9</b>	,				s), 3.90 (3H,		.01 (1H each.	. (69. 53	6. 83	3.00)	
•	I-46	CO TOBA	<b>=</b>	0	m	~~·	_	7. 49. 7. 91 (1) 1. 50 (2H. m).	7.91 (1H each, dt), 7.96 (1H, 2H, B), 2.31 (3H, B)	dt), 7.96 (1H, s) 2H, m), 2.33 (3H,	CzellzsH0-IICI-0. 8H20	·11C1 • 0.	8H <sub>2</sub> 0	
:			•	]		<b>-</b>	ine powder	(2H, t), 3.74 4.80 (2H, s).	(2H, t), 3.74 (2H, s), 3.84 (2H, s), 4.80 (2H, s), 6.85-7.30 (12H, m).	84 (2N, s). 12H, =).	73.83	7.58	3. 32 3. 32)	_
	I-41		×	0	m,	-	Noncrystal.   line powder			2.10-2.60 (7H, m). 3.91(2H, s). 4.85	C. H., NO.S. IIC1 67. 20 7. 04	S-IIC1- 7.04	1. 58,0 2. 41	
1 :	1-48	` } `~	<b>=</b>	6	က		Noncrystal.	(2H, s), 6.95- 1.34-1.84 (8H,	7.50		(67.33 6.97 Cs3H37NOs-HC1.	6.97 5-HC1. 1	2. 41) 2H <sub>1</sub> 0	
·			, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	)				2. 20-2. 65 (4H, ≡). 3. 84 (3H, s). 3. 88	3. 88 3. 88	2. 82-3. 11 (3H, m). (3H, s). 4. 84 (2H.	(70.89	7.39	2.51)	
	; ;		· .					s), 6.65 (1H,	6.65 (1H. d). 6.83 (1H.	H. dd), 6.92		٠.		
•			· .		•	· ·	•	-7. 04 (2H, B)	-7.04 (28, m), 7.06-7.31 (78, m)	(JE. E.).				

8.01 (1H. dd).

		. ·				18				
	Elemental Analysis [Found/(Calculated)] C H N	C31H15NO1/HCI-1.5H10 72.16 7.17 2.81 (72.64 7.43 2.65)	C. H. FWO. HC1-2. 5H.0	67.07 7.33 2.14 (66.82 7.59 2.29)	74.73 7.40 2.97	7.58 3.10)	72. 48 7. 87 2. 56	7. 99 2. 41)	C30H35NOS-HC1-H20	70. 18 7. 17 2. 56 (70. 36 7. 48 2. 78)
	ental WCalc	02,480 7.1 7.4	9	~ ~	7. 7.		~		NOS	
	Elemental Anal (Found/Calculated) C H N	C31818N 72.16 (72.64	,	67.07 (66.82	74.73 7.40 2.	(74. 40	C35H43NO3-HC1-H20 72.48 7.87 2.5	(72. 45	C30H35	70. 18
	(נוסט)	Noncrystal 1.47-1.87 (8H, m), 1.96-2.14 (3H, m), line powder 2.20-2.68 (4H, m), 2.86-3.08 (3H, m), 3.87 (2H, s), 4.84 (2H, s), 6.92-7.04	(2), z), 7, 08-7, 36 (84, z), 7, 44 (2), dt), 7, 99-8, 06 (14, z),	line powder 1:30 2:00 (1911, M), 2:12 2:30 (211, s), 3:80-3:90 (811, m), 4:87 (211, s), 6:56-6:58 (211, m), 6:90-7:30 (811, m).	1. 50 (2H, m), 1. 60-2. 00 (4H, m), 2. 102. 40 (2H, m), 2. 60-2. 80 (4H, m);	3. 70 (1H, t), 3. 92 (2H, s), 4. 87 (2H, s), 6. 95-7, 35 (13H, m).	1. 19-1. 38 (1H, m), 1. 37-1. 92 (11H, m), 2. 08-2. 37 (4H, m), 2. 51-2. 85 (6H, m).	3.83 (611, s), 3.90, 4.87 (2H each, s), 6.54, 6.56 (1H each, s), 6.94-7.34	, 3. 91(2H, d),	1(1H. q).
	NWR (8,,m, CDC13)	1. 47-1. 87 (8H, m) 2. 20-2. 68 (4H, m) 3. 87 (2H, s) 4. 3	(2)( m), 7.08-7.36 (8H dt), 7.99-8.06 (1H, m)	1. 30 2. 30 (10.1) m), 3. 80-3. 90 (81 6. 56-6. 58 (2H. m	1. 50 (2H, m), 1.	3.70 (1H, t), 3.92 (2H, s), 6.95-7,35 (13H, m).	1. 19-1. 38 (1H, m 2. 08-2. 37 (4H, m	3.83 (611, s), 3. 6.54, 6.56 (111 e	(9H, m) 1. 35-2. 95(15H, m), 3. 91(2H, d),	4.88('2H, s), 6.91(1H, q). 6.98-7.50(10H, m)
	Melting Point (°C)	Noncrystal- line powder	Noncrystal.	line powder	Noncrystal. 1	*	Noncrystal- line powder		Noncrystal. 1	nne powder
	×	3 1	-	<b>-</b>			-			- A
	YŁ W	0	(		0		0		(O)	<b>)</b> .
	òc c	=		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	=	) }-₹	H JYOHE	~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~	<u></u>	
•	Example	\$	- (	)- PE-1	] 15-1		1-52		[-83 [-83	
										·

55	50	45		40	35	30	25	<b>20</b>	15	10	5	
Table 26												•
Example R <sup>1</sup> R <sup>2</sup>	o Ar	<b>E</b>	(\$) Yield	) Melting Point (*C)			NXR (Jose,	in CDC1,			Elemental Analysis (Found/(Calculated))	/sis
H 1-54 H 1-54 OCC 1-5	© ^°	3 1	69	Noncrystal- line powder		1.39-1.61 (2H, m), 2.14-2.26 (2H, m), 2.26 (3H, s), 2.43, 2.70 (2H each, t), 3.91, 4.87 (2H each, s), 3.91, 4.87 (2H, t), 5.90 (2H, s), 6.29 (1H, dd), 6.47, 6.68	2. 14-2. 26 th, t), 3. 91 s), 6. 29 (	(2H, m), 2, , 4.87 (2H, 1H, dd), 6.	1.61 (2H, m), 2.14-2.26 (2H, m), 2.26 (3H, s), 2.70 (2H each, t), 3.91, 4.87 (2H each, s), 3.95 t), 5.90 (2H, s), 6.29 (1H, dd), 6.47, 6.68	C24B317 67.27 (67.26	Cz 6 H 3 1 NO 4 - HCI - H 2 O 67. 27 6. 84 3. (67. 26 6. 85 2.	3. 58 2. 80)
1-55 -инси, —	0	<b>-</b>	99	Noncrystal- line powder	,	(in each, d), 6.93-f.32 (9H, m) 1.24-1.50 (2H, m), 1.97-2.24 (2H, m), 2.45 (2H, t), 3.69, 4.84 (2H each, s), 3.86 (2H, q), 6.91 (1H, dd), 6.00-7 44 (12H m)	1. 97 - 2. 24 1. 97 - 2. 24 th, s), 3. 86	(2H, m), 2. (2H, q), 6.	15 (2H, t). 91 (1H. dd).	C3.183.13	္က်	3.16
-56 H -0)-0Me	<b>©</b>	က ၊	20	69-74	3.36 3.84 5.7 7-7	1.36-1.65 (2H, m), 2.05-2.35 (2H, m), 3.21 (2H, q), 3.84 (3H each, s), 3.87 (2H, s), 4.83 (2H, s), 4.84 br t), 6.47 (1H, br s), 6.66 (1H, dd), 6.77 (1H, d), 6.87-7.31 (10H m)	2. 05-2. 35 3. 87 (211, r s), 6. 66	(2H, m), 3.7 s), 4.83 (2h (1H, dd), 6.	1.36-1.65 (2H, m), 2.05-2.35 (2H, m), 3.21 (2H, q), 3.81 3.84 (3H each, s), 3.87 (2H, s), 4.83 (2H, s), 4.84 (1H, br t), 6.47 (1H, br s), 6.66 (1H, dd), 6.77 (1H, d), 6.87-7.31 (10H, m)	1 C <sub>2.1</sub> H <sub>3.6</sub> M <sub>2</sub> O <sub>4</sub> , 72.79 6. (72.62 6.	6. 77. 6. 77. 6. 77	6. 10 6. 27)
	0	es .	73	183-188	2. 99- 4), 6		2. 00-2. 30 3. 30. 4. 85 . m), 7. 50	(2H, m), 2.3 (2H each, s (1H, d), 7.6	m), 2.00-2.30 (2H, m), 2.33-2.72 (3H, n), m), 3.30. 4.85 (2H each, s), 3.93 (2H, 1H, m), 7.50 (1H, d), 7.62 (1H, ddd),	_	N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub> - HC1 - 6.87 6.84	.Н.о 4. 95 5. 14)
	0	en .	83	174-179	8. 47 ( 1. 30-1 3. 05 ( 4. 83 (	(1H, br s, 1.80 (7H, (1H, dd), (2H each,	2. 04-2. 20 7-3. 30 (1H, 3. 94 (3H,	(2H, m), 2.4 m), 3.35 (1 s), 6.85 (1H	) m), 2. 04-2. 20 (2H, m), 2. 41-2. 83 (4H, n), 3. 07-3. 30 (1H, m), 3. 35 (1H, d), 3. 90. s), 3. 94 (3H, s), 6. 85 (1H, d), 6. 94-7. 30	_	6.91 6.91 6.90	-3,2H <sub>1</sub> 0 4.85 4.80)
H ON H	0	٠ ا	69	175-180	. 30H. 2. 30- 6. 80-	(10H, m), 7.42 (1H, 1.30-1.66 (9H, m), 2.80-3.19 (2H, m), 6.80-6.87 (2H, m),		(1H, dd), 8.42 (1H, br s) m), 2.10-2.34 (2H, m), 2.37 m), 3.85 (3H, s), 3.92, 4.8 m), 6.95-7.31 (10H, m), 7.6	dd), 8.12 (1H. hr s) 2.10-2.34 (2H. m), 2.37-2.79 (5H. m), 3.85 (3H. s), 3.92, 4.88 (2H each, s). 6.95-7.31 (10H. m), 7.66 (1H. br s)		7. 28 7. 33	-1, 10H <sub>2</sub> 0 4, 93 5, 04)
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1												

Table 28 Example R1	•	٧٤		×	18 S	Malting Point (°C)	NWR (3,	NWR (3p,m, in CDCl3)	in the second	Elemental Analysia (Found/Celculated) C H N	
1-68 -W	Н омо	0	m m	ر . د د د	بر ب	Noncrystal- line powder	1.00-1.40 (811, m), 1.65-2.40 (12H, m), 3.65-3.85 4.79 (2H, s), 6.48 (1H, s), 6.80-7.29 (10H, m) 1.35-1.75 (2H, m), 1.90-2.30 (5H, m), 3.15 (1H,	1.00-1.40 (8H, m), 1.65-2.40 (12H, m), 3.65-3.85 (8H, m), C <sub>3.8</sub> H <sub>41,</sub> NO <sub>3.</sub> HCl·3/2H <sub>3</sub> O 4.79 (2H, s), 6.48 (1H, s), 6.80-7.29 (10H, m) 70.31 7.78 2.38 (70.38 8.05 2.49) 1.35-1.75 (2H, m), 1.90-2.30 (5H, m), 3.15 (1H, t), 3.36 C <sub>2.8</sub> H <sub>2.NO<sub>2</sub>-7/10H<sub>2</sub>O</sub>		C <sub>5.1</sub> H <sub>4.1</sub> NO <sub>5.1</sub> HC1-3/2H <sub>5</sub> O 70.31 7.78 2.38 (70.38 8.05 2.49) C <sub>5.7</sub> H <sub>5.8</sub> NO <sub>5-7</sub> /10H <sub>5</sub> O	6
I-70 AC	H H g	0 0	, "	. 5	4::: : :::	Noncrystal- line powder	(1H, t), 3.85 (1H, d), 3.88 (1H, s), 4.40-4.60 4.84 (1H, s), 4.86 (1H, s), 6.85-7.38 (14H, m) 1.40-1.63 (3H, m), 1.90-3.01 (11H, m), 3.74 (3 3.91 (2H, s), 4.85 (2H, s), 6.59 (1H, d), 6.66 6.95-7.30 (10H, m)	(1H, t), 3.85 (1H, d), 3.88 (1H, s), 4.40-4.60 (2H, m). 4.84 (1H, s), 4.86 (1H, s), 6.85-7.38 (14H, m). 1.40-1.63 (3H, m), 1.90-3.01 (11H, m), 3.74 (3H, s), 3.91 (2H, s), 4.85 (2H, s), 6.59 (1H, d), 6.66 (1H, dd), 6.95-7.30 (10H, m)		78. 78 7. 20 3. 41 (79. 02 7. 47 3. 41) C <sub>3</sub> ,11 <sub>3</sub> ,NO <sub>4</sub> ·HC1·3/2H <sub>5</sub> O 72. 02 7. 10 2. 78 (72. 29 7. 24 2. 72)	

#### Exampl II-1

4-{2-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl}-3,4-dihydro-4-phenylisoquinolin dihydrochlorid

1-[4-(p-Fluoroph nyl)pip razin-1-yi]-4-formylamino-3,3-diph nylbutane (7 g) was h ated in polyphosphoric acid (70 g) at 170°C with stirring for 2 hours. The reacti n mixture was poured in ice-water (500 ml), made basic with concentrated aqueous ammonia and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with was ter, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) and treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (3,5 g) as non-crystalline powder.

Compounds II-2 ~ 4 and II-6 ~ 15 were respectively synthesized in the same manner as Example II-1

# Compound II-2:

3,4-Dihydro-4-(3-morpholinopropyl)-4-phenylisoquinoline hydrochloride

Compound II-3:

3,4-Dihydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(phthalimido)propyl]isoquinoline hydrochloride

Compound II-4:

3,4-Dihydro-4-[3-(2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1(H)-3-benzazepin-3-yi]propylisoquinoline dihydrochlorid

Compound II-6:

3,4-Dihydro-4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-phenylisoquinolin dihydrochloride

Compound II-7:

4-[3-(N-Benzyl-N-methyl)aminopropyl]-3,4-dihydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride

Compound II-8:

4-Phenyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]isoquinoline

Compound II-9:

4-{3-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-3,4-dihydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride

Compound II-10:

4-[3-(4-Benzylpiperazin-1-yl]propyl]-3,4-dihydro-4-phenylisoquinoline trihydrochloride

Compound II-11:

3,4-Dihydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperidin-1-yl]propyl]isoquinoline dihydrochloride

Compound II-12:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-3,4-dihydro-4-(3-phthallmidopropyl)isoquinoline hydrochloride

Compound II-13:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-3,4-dihydro-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazino)propyl]isoquinoline trihydrochloride

Compound II-14:

3-(p-Chlorphenyl)-3,4-dihydro-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperidino)propyl]isoquinoline dihydrochlorid

#### Compound II-15:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-4-{3-[4-(p-fluoroph nyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-3,4-dihydroisoquinoline chloride

Exampl II-5

10

15

20

35

50

4-(3-Aminopropyl)-3,4-dihydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride

To a solution of 3,4-dihydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(phthalimidopropyl)]isoquinoline (4.1 g) in methanol (100 ml) was added hydrazine hydrate (1.04 g) and the mixture was refluxed for 22 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate - 1N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The organic layer was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (2 g) as light-tan non-crys-

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are shown in Tables 29, 30 and 31.

and the state of the second of

	<b>.</b>
Elemental Analysis    Carillis FNs. 2HCI - 5/2lli0   Cirillis FNs. 2HCI - 1/2lli0   Cirillis FNs. 2HCI - 1/2lli0   Cirillis FNs. 2HCI - 4/5lli0   Cirillis FNs. 2HCI - 4/5lli0   Cirillis FNs. 2HCI - 1/2lli0   Cirillis	(62. 43 6. 69
(1H, dd). (9H, m). (9H, m). 4.25 8.30 (1H, m). 7.3.77 -7.45 .77-7.87 (1H, dd). s). 2.88 (1h, dd). s).	4. 28 8. 30
	3.81 -7.48
NWR (8,pm. 10-2.50 (4H, t), 3.83 (4H, t), 3.83 (6.80-7.00 (4H, 8). 3.67 (2H, t), 1.40-1.70 (2H, s). (1H, dd), 7.20 (1H, s). (1H, dd), 4.25 (2H, m), 8.28 (1H, m), 3.82 (2H, m), 2.41 (2H, m), 3.82 (4H, m), 3.82 (4H	3. t
**************************************	
Tr (CH <sub>2</sub> ) = -R  -xF  -xF  -xF  -xF  -xF  -xF  -xF  -	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	できる。
Table 7  Example II-1  II-3  II-4  II-5	

5 10 15	NYR. (1,,,, CDC1,) Elemental Analysis	(1H, m), 1.41-1.63 (1H, m), Carl (2H, m), Carl	(2H, m), 3, 81 (1H, dd), (63, 26 7, 33 dd), 7, 15-7, 46 (9H, m), t) (1H, m), 1, 46-1, 69 (1H, m), C <sub>2</sub> eH <sub>2</sub> eH <sub>2</sub> r2HCl-1/2 (2H, m), 2, 28-2, 38 (2H, m), 69, 60 7, 53	•	7 (1H, dd), 6.80-6.95 -7.46 (11H, m), 8.30 m), 2.09 (2H, m), 2.51 C: 1.1. FNs - 2HCl - 2 (4H, t), 3.83 (1H, dd)	00 (4H, m), (62, 68 [ (1H, s), (2H, s), (2, 0, H, s) Nr. 3	. 23 (1M, dd), 7. 10- 8. 29 (1M, s). a). 2. 95 (2M, br d), C <sub>1</sub> . 4. 27 (1M, dd), 7. 10-	(67, 30 7, 40
25	Melting Ni Point (°C)	155-160 1, 12-1, 36 2, 00-2, 11		2. 10 (30, (1H, dd), (14H, m), Syrup 1. 16-1. 41 2. 50 (4H,	ê	4. 27 (1h. 7. 10-7. 50 150-154 1. 20-2. 50 3. 80718	250E	f. 30 (14H,
35	m x Me	3 2 1	3 2 15		3 2 Non	3 3 150	3 2 Non line	
40	R <sup>2</sup> Ar	<u> </u>	O H	<u>()</u>	(i)		(O)	
30	e R⁄	-1(CB3)3-	di,			II-10 -{     POH O		
Table 30	Example	9-11	l-11	8-11	6-II.	11-10	11-JI	

;. ;-

: ,}

							•
•							
	<b>7</b>	γι	×	Melting Point (°C)	NWR (3,,,, CDC13)	Elemental Analysis [Found/Calculated)]	alysis
	×	<u>Ş</u>	დ -1	136-141	1.38-1.59 (1H, m), 1.64-1.89 (1H, m), 1.96-2.22 (2H, m), 3.64 (2H, t), 3.73 (1H, dd), 7.10-7.48	2	1.1/2H <sub>1</sub> 0 5.85 5.91)
(O)	Ħ	(O)	က က	164-169	(8H, m), 7.66-7.88.(4H, m), 8.23 (1H, t) 1.17-1.40 (1H, m), 1.45-1.68 (1H, m), 2.00-2.40 (2H, m), 2.27-2.42 (2H, m), 2.45-2.58 (4H, m), 3.17 (4H, t), 3.79	C <sub>1,113,</sub> C1N <sub>1</sub> ,3HC1 60.86 6.24	7. 54
(a)	<b>=</b>	Ö	e 6	165-170	-7. 48 -7. 48	C, 11, C1N 65. 36	H <sub>2</sub> 0 4.80
	7-C1	© i	e 6	Noncrystal. line powder	2. 20-2. 33 (3n. m.). 2. 63-3. 00 (2n. m.). 3. 79 (1n. dd), 4. 25 (1n. dd), 7. 14-7. 48 (13h. m.), 8. 29 (1n. t) 1. 20-1. 60 (2h. m.), 2. 05 (2h. m.), 2. 51 (4ll. m.), 3. 09 (4h. t), 3. 80 (1h. dd), 4. 23 (1h. dd), 6. 80-7. 00 (4h. m.), 7. 10-7. 40 (7h. m.), 8. 25 (1h. s.).	1 C16816C11 54.79 (54.74	7. 2 6. 84)

Example III-1

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-(2-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl)-4-ph nylisoquinoline dihydrochloride

T a solution of 4-(2-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl)-3,4-dihydro-4-phenylisoquinoline (3.1 g) in thanol (50 ml) was added sodium borohydrid (0.774 g) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was dissolved in iced water (50 ml) and extracted with ethyl acetate. The xtract was washed with water, dried ov r anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryn ss. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) and treated with hydrochloric acid to provid the title compound (3.0 g) as non-crystalline powder.

Compounds III-2, III-4, III-7 and III-9 ~ 15 were respectively synthesized in the same manner as Example III-1.

#### 10 Compound III-2:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-(3-morpholinopropyi)-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride

#### Compound III-4:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-[3-(2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1(H)-3-benzazepin-3-yl)]propyl-4-phenylisoquinolin dihy-

#### Compound III-7:

20

4-[3-(N-Benzyl-N-methyl)aminopropyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride Compound III-9:

4-(3-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride Compound III-10:

4-[3-(4-Benzylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-phenylisoquinoline trihydrochloride
Compound III-11:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpipt ridino)propyl]isoquinoline dihydrochloride

35 Compound III-13:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]isoquinoline dihydrochloride Compound III-14:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperidino)propyl]isoquinoline dihydrochloride Compound III-15:

45 4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-4-{3-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline dihy-

### Example III-3

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(phthalimido)propyl]isoquinoline hydrochloride
To a solution of 3,4-dihydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(phthalimido)propyl]isoquinoline (1 g) in ethanol (30 ml) was added 10% palladium-on-carbon (0.3 g) and hydrogenation was carried out at atmospheric pressure and temperature for 5 hours. The catalyst was then filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated to dryness. The residu was treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (0.77 g) as light-yellow powder.

Compounds III-5, 6, 8 and 12 were respectively synthesized in the same manner as Example III-3.

LAMBOURIU III-J	Com	pound	111-5
-----------------	-----	-------	-------

4-(3-Aminopropyi)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochlorid

### 5 Compound III-6

4-[3-(Dimethylamino)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride

# Compound III-8:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-phenyl-4-[3-(4-phenylplperazin-1-yl)propyl]isoquinoline trihydrochloride

### Compound III-12:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-[3-(phthalimido)propyl]isoquinoline
The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the above compounds are shown in Tables 32, 33 and 34.

15

10

28

30

35

40

50

:,

5	•	Elemental Analysis (Found/Calculated))	<b>-</b> -	(61.83 6.95 7.89) C:: H:: N:0-2HC1-1/2H:0 63.33 7.47 6.57	(63.15 7.47 6.70) C1eH14N1O1-HCI-1/2H10 70.74 6.04 6.16 (70.66 5.93 6.34)	C <sub>28</sub> H <sub>32</sub> N <sub>2</sub> ·2HCl·6/5H <sub>2</sub> O 68.51 7.38 5.63 (68.47 7.47 5.70)	-211C1 - 3/5 7.69 7.95	2.001-R.0 8.51 7.85
15		(DCI.)	m), 3.11 (4H, t), 3.18 (1H, d), 4.06 (2H, d),	1, ж), к), 2.10-2.40 (8H, к), 3.68 (4H, t), 4.04 (2H,	(9H, m). m). 2.20-2.41 (2H, m). 3.69 (1H, d), 3.69 (2H, q), 7.09-7.36	2. 16 (2H, dd), 2. 89 (1H, d).	2. 09-7. 30 (13H, 2. 09-2. 42 (2H, (2H, q), 4. 02 br s), 6. 97-7	2. 18-2. -2. 70 (2 q), 4. 8 .33 (9H.
25		NW (6000)	2. 20-2. 70 (8H, 1) (1H, d), 3. 28 (	6. 80-7. 30 (13) 1. 30-1. 60 (2H, 3. 19 (2H, s),	d), 7.00-7.30 1.50-1.80 (2H, 3.35 (1H, d), (2H, t), 4.27 (9H, m), 7.63-	(2H, m) 1.30-1.60 (2H, (2H, t), 2.56 3.15 (1H, d),	. 12 (1H. 1. 75 (2H. (2H. t). a). 4. 72	m) -1.80 (2H, (6H, s), s), 4.10 br s), 7.
30	<u>م</u>	Melting Point (°C)	Noncrystal. line powder	Noncrystal- line powder	146-150	Noncrystal- line powder	169-173	148-153
30 35	(CB <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>n</sub> – R' Nn	m x Melting Point	2 2 Noncrysus line powd	3 2 Noncryst	3 1 146-150	3 2 Noncryst line powd	3 2 169-173	3 2 148-153
		*	7	8	<b>-</b>	H O 3 2 Noncryst	H (O) 3 2 169-173	H (O) 3 2 148-153
	Table 32  Rooman	Ar m x	7	8	<b>-</b>	-Noncryst	-NH <sub>2</sub> H (O) 3 2 169-173	-N(CE <sub>3</sub> ), <sup>R</sup> (O) 3 2 148-153

		_	_									-						•		,	ì
		sis	5.83	6. 12)	5810 7.67	8. 01)	H,0	7.80)		0 7, 53	7. 60)		5.55	5. 59)	H,0	5.83		H20	7.83)		
5		[Analy culated)]	HC1 · 4/5	7.40	HC1-1/	6. 99	2HC1-2	. 5 . 8	!	MC1-H <sub>2</sub> -	7. 29	#C1-113	7.95	7.64	01.8/5	5. 49		-ZICI -	. 90 6. 76		
•		Elemental Analysis Found/Calculated)  C II N	CzeHseNz-2HC1-4/5Hz0 68.09 7.44 5.8		C2.H3,N3-3HC1-1/5R30 64.07 7.32 7.67		•-	62. 49 (62. 44		C2.113.N3.3HC1.H20		CII.,N2HC1-II.0	69. 23	(69. 45	C24.11.1C1N201-8/5H10		(67.92		62. 63 (62. 63		
10		<u>ස</u> ිහුට	i e			_		,	•	. C.	- 3				1.1		=				
			. 2. 16 [ a).	7.00-7.35	; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;;	(2H, q),	E). 2.39	(4H. t). 6.80-7.40		2. 10-2. 50 (12H, m).	d). 7.00-	1 70-2 60 (11H. m).	3. 26 (111.	(1H. d). 7.00-	3.13	f. 4).	<b>`</b>		ر 1	101	
15	•		3 (3H. s). 3 18 (2H.	Q), 7.0	2. 08-2. 30 (2H, (4H, t). 3. 17		(2H. =	3.09 (4) d), 6.8		-2.50 (2	(H, e).	2 60 (1	d). 3.	ж. е).	(2H, t).	4. 02 (2H.			t), 3.17 4.05 (28 a)	7.00-7.30 (1011)	
		CBC1*)	2. 13 ( t). 3	: <b>ন্ড</b>	2. 08-5	20 20		Ç. ₩		2. 10-1	9 2	1 20-	3	. 12	2. 18			2.03	₹ (		
20		KKR (J.p.,	H, E), 6 (2H,	-	(2H, m),			. 4. 05		(2H. 1).		_•	,	÷	(2H,).	$\sim$	(8H, B),	(2H, a),	7. 2. 52 17. 794	(3#. E).	
		NYR	1. 31-1. 58 (2H,	•	.41 74 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14	60		t), 2.52 (2H. d).						$\Box$				. 60 (2	2. 38 (2H. t).	. 96 (3	
25	•		1.31-1 (?H. ±		1, 36-1	(4H, t).	1.40-1	3, 21 (2H, 1	(13H,	1.30-1.50	e. e.	~ ~	2. 98	d). 4.	1. 49-1. 80	(24,	6. 96-7. 27	1.30-1.60	2. 38 (2H,	6 80-6 96	;
		Melting Point (°C)	150-155		175-179		39-140			160-165		164-169	3		139-143	2		165-170			
30	•	Melt Poir	150		175		139			160		18.6	5		139	1		165			
		×	3 2		ი ი		3 2			<del>ი</del>			3		643 (	•		3			
35				2	$\bigcirc$	l	<u>~</u>	5		<u>6</u>	5	, (	<i>→</i>	,	٦	; ``	. (	<u>ج</u>	)		
		γ	100	J)	$\bigcirc$			ע		O	ני	(	رر	•	7	ノ	į	¥	)		
<b>40</b>	•	24	=		<b>==</b>		== Lr	<del>.</del>		# ·		5	=		<b>21</b>	<b>:</b>	**	=		. :	
	•		6		0		C			(S		(	(	· . ·.	(	2					
45		ès.	-1CB.	c <sub>ff</sub> s	(=		خ چ			₹5 <u>1</u>	)	ζ	_)	, ,	<i>ب</i> کر	لم	0		J.		
	Table 33	Je.	1-		ထု		٠ ق	•		III-10		· =	<b>:</b>		[41-12	:	-	-13			
50	Tab	Example	1111-1		111-8		111		٠	111	•				131	:		III	. ··	•	
																41					

1 1				•				· 1
alysis ed)	H,0	4.89	5. 23)		,	7.34.0	6.44	6. 72)
Elemental Analysis (Found/(Calculated))	-2IIC1	7.24	6.96			FN 2HC	6. 20	6. 12
Elemei Found	C, H, CIK,	65.35 7.24 4.89	(64. 99 6. 96 5. 23)	,	•	Creffsectel	53.84	(53.77
MIR (4,,, 'CDC1,)	3 2 182-187 1.33-1.59 (2H, m), 1.70-1.90 (4H, m), CasHasCINa-ZHCI-HaO	2, 36 (2H, t),	2.30-2.55 (1H, E). 2.89-3.04 (2H, E).	3.18 (2H. q). 4.05 (2H. q), 6.99-7.33		2.13 (2H, m), 2.38	t). 3.00-3.20 (6H.	m), 4.02 (2H, d), 6.80-7.30 (11H, m). (53.77 6.12 6.72)
3	₩.	H. E.	H	4.05		H	53 (4R.	 e.
MIK	1. 33-1. 59 (2	1.89-2.23 (4	2. 30-2. 55 (1	3. 18 (2H. q)	(13H, m)	1.30-1.60 (2	(2H, t), 2.5	a). 4.02 (2H
m x Melting Point (°C)	182-187				•	Noncrystal.	line powder	
×	2					~		
yt	3	12 (O)	)				<b>ジ</b> 〇~	
<b>&amp;</b>	=					75	· •.	
<b>,</b> %	(	(O) T					子(0)子	) )
xample	111-14					111-15		

Example IV-1

4-{2-[4-(p-Flu rophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl}-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-phenylisoquinolin

chloride

T a solution of 4-{2-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl}-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-phenylisoquinolin (0.6 g) in ethanol (15 ml) was added 37% formalin (1 ml) as well as 10% palladium- n-carb n (0.25 g) and the mixture was stirred in hydrogen streams at atmospheric pressure and room temperature for 3 hours. The catalyst was then filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) and treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (0.43 g) as non-crystakkube powder.

Compounds IV-2, 7, 8 and 9 were respectively synthesized in the same manner as Example IV-1.

to Compound IV-2:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-pheny!-4-[3-(phthalimido)propyl]isoquinoline hydrochloride

Compound IV-7:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-phenyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]isoquinoline trihydrochlor ide

Compound IV-8:

20

4-(3-[4-(p-Fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-phenylisoquinoline trihydrochloride

Compound IV-9:

25

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-[(3-phthalimido)propyl]isoquinoline hydrochloride

Example IV-3

4-(3-Aminopropyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-phenylisoquinoline hydrochloride

2-Methyl-4-phenyl-4-[3-(phthalimido)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline (2 g) was heated in methanol (50 ml) under reflux in the presence of hydrazine hydrate (0.5 g) for 17 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate - 1N sodium hydroxide solution. The ganic layer was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (1.5 g) as white powder.

Compound IV-10 was synthesized in the same manner as Example IV-3.

Compound IV-10:

4-(3-Aminopropyl)-4-(chlorophenyl)-1,2,3,4-tetra hydro-2-methylisoquinoline hydrochlorid

Example IV-4

4-[3-Benzylamino)propyl]-1,3,3,4-tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-phenylisoquinoline hydrochloride

To a solution of 4-(3-aminopropyl)-2-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline (0.4 g) and benzal dehyde (0.76 g) in ethanol (15 ml) was added 10% palladium-on-carbon (0.15 g) and hydrogenation was carried out at atmospheric temperature and room temperature overnight. From this reaction mixture the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography and treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (0.38 g) as light-yellow powder.

Example IV-5

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-phenyl-4-[3-(phenylureido]propyl]isoquinoline

To a solution of 4-(3-aminopropyl)-2-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline (0.4 g) in chloroform (10 ml) was added phenyl isocyanate (0.25 g) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residunce was crystallized from methanolisopropyl ether to provide the title compound (0.39 g) as colorless powder.

Compound IV-6 and IV-24 was synth siz d in the same manner as Example IV-5.

#### Compound IV-6:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-[3-(3-methoxyph nylureid )propyl]-4-phenylisoquin lin

5 Compound IV-24:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-2-methyl-4-[3-phenylthioureido)propyl]-4-phenylisoquinoline

Example IV-12

10

30

35

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-2-methyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline hydrochloride

To a solution of 4-(p-chlorophenyl)-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin (0.7 g) in acetonitrile (15 ml) was added formalin (0.64 ml). Then, sodium cyanoborohydride (0.16 g) was added portionwise with stirring. The mixture was stirred for 15 minutes, at the end of which time acetic acid was added dropwise until the solution became neutral. The mixture was further stirred for 2 hours and the reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate-1N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The organic layer was washed with water, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography and treated with hydrochloric acid to provde the title compound (0.6 g) as colorless powder.

Compounds IV-11, 13 and 14 were respectively synthesized in the same manner as Example IV-12.

Compound IV-11:

25 4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-4-[3-(2-hydroxymethylbenzoyl amino)propyl]-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquino-

Compound IV-13:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-2-methyl-4-[3-(4-phenylpiperidino)propyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline trihydrochloride

Compound IV-14:

4-(p-Chlorophenyl)-4-{3-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperidino]propyl}-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline trihydrochloride

Example IV-15

4-[3-(4-Benzylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]-4-phenyl-2-propyl-1,2,3,4,-tetrahydroisoquinoline hydrochloride
To a solution of 4-[3-(4-benzylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]-4-phenyl-1,32;3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline (0.62 g) in
a mixture of acetonitrile (20 ml) and DMF (10 ml) were added 3-iodopropane (0.26 g) and potassium carbonat
(0.38 g) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated
to dryness and dissolved in water-ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate layer was washed with water, dried over
anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform-methanol = 15:1) and treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (0.6
g) as non-crystalline powder.

Compound IV-16 was synthesized in the same manner as Example IV-15.

50 Compound IV-16:

2-Benzyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-[3-(morpholino)propyl]-4-phenylisoquinoline dihydrochloride

Example IV-17

55

2-Acetyl-4-phenyl-4-(2-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline hydrochloride

To a solution of 4-phenyl-4-{2-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl}-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoguinoline

(1.2 g) in methylene chlorid (30 ml) was added acetic anhydride (0.33 ml) with ice-cooling and stirring and the mixture was further stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was then concentrated to dryness and the residue was purified by silicated column chromatography (ethyliac tate-methanol = 10:1) and treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (1.2 g) as white crystals.

Compounds IV-18, 21, 22 and 23 were synthesized in the same manner as Example IV-17.

#### Compound IV-18:

2-(p-Bromobenzoyl)-4-(p-chlorophenyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-[2-(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)propyl]isoquinoline dihydrochloride

#### Compound IV-21:

2-Methanesulfonyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-{3-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1(H)-3-benzazepin-3-yi]pro-

#### Compound 22:

2-(2-Methylenesulfonyl)-4-phenyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-(3-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]propyl)iso-quinoline hydrochloride.

#### Compound 23:

2-Methoxycarbonyl-4-(p-chlorophenyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-(3-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]pro25 pyl}isoquinoline hydrochloride

#### Example IV-19

4-[3-(N-Benzyl-N-methylamino)propyl]-4-phenyl-2-phenylcarbamoyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline hydrochloride

To a solution of 4-[3-(N-benzyl-N-methylamino)propyl]-4-phenyl-1,3,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline (0.8 g) in chloroform (20 ml) was added phenyl isocyanate (0.38 g) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography. The resulting syrup was treated with hydrochloric acid to provide the title compound (0.8 g) as colorless powder.

Compound IV-20 was synthesized in the same manner as Example IV-19.

#### Compound IV-20:

1,2,3,4-Tetrahydro-4-{2-[4-(p-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl]ethyl)-2-(3-methoxyphenyl)carbamoyl-4-phenylisoquinoline hydrochloride

The structural formulas, physical properties and NMR spectra of the respective compounds are sh wn in Tables 35, 36, 37, 38, 39 and 40.

			•		•		
5		Elemental Analysis [Found/Colculated)]	C <sub>1.1</sub> 1FN <sub>1.</sub> ·2liC <sub>1.</sub> ·5/2li <sub>2</sub> 0 61.48 7.21 7.61 (61.42 7.18 7.67)	C27H26H2O4-HC1-1/2H2O 71.27 6.08 6.18 (71.12 6.19 6.14)	C1.6H2.4N2.2UC1.3/5H20 63.04 7.86 7.19 (62.67 7.53 7.69)	C**II**N**211C1*6/511*0 67.15 7.56 5.57	(67. 15 7. 46 6. 02)
15		(100)	2.58 (4H, t), 2.74 (4H, t), 3.62 (2H, (4H, m), 7.10-7.30	.50-1.87 (2H, m), 2.09-2.43 (2H, ), 2.32 (3H, s), 2.70 (2H, s), .59 (2H, s), 3.67 (2H, t), 6.87-93 (1H, m), 7.01-7.30 (8H, m), 65-7.75 (2H, m), 7.77-7.87	(21, a), 2.34 (21, a), 2.34 (2), 2.71 (2),	0. 31-5. 3f (111, m), m). 2. 06-2. 35 (211, s), 2. 62 (211, t),	3.61 (211, q), 3.74 -6.97 (111, m), 7.05-
<b>20</b>		MR (J	2. 34 (311, s), 2. 58 (21, s), 3. 11 (41, d), 6. 80-7. 00 (411, d)	1. 50-1. 87 (2H, m), 2. 32 (3H, s), 6. 93 (1H, m), 7. 65-7. 75 (7H, m), 7. 67H, m), 7. 65-7. 75 (7H, m), 7. 65-7. 75 (7H	(211, a) 1. 16 (24, br s a), 2. 06-2. 32 s), 2. 68 (21,	7. 30 (8). 1. 65 (3). 33 (2).	2. 70 (2H, s), 3. 61 (2H, (2H, s), 6. 90-6. 97 (1H, 7. 37 (13H, 11))
25	, N	Melting Point (°C)	2 Noncrystal- line powder	191-194	183-189	157-162	,
30	Ar (CH1)n-R	#	2	3 1	3 2	3 2	
<b>35</b> '		R. R. Ar		(O)	6 sib	(O)	
40	· •	Že			-NB <sub>2</sub>		
<b>45</b>	Table 35	Example	المجا	2-1-1	IY-3 -N	IV-4NIICI	
ю		•					

Tabl	Table 36								•
Example	le R'	<b>2</b>	<b>~</b>	ĄΓ	×	Melting Point (°C)	HAR (1,,,, CDC1,)	Elemental Analysis [Found/(Calculated)]	2 A
14-5 14-5	-инсоив	Jac	5	0	m	143-146	55 (2H, E). 2.03-2.35 (2H, E). 2 (3H, S). 2.68 (2H, S). H, q). 3.60 (2H, q). 4.74 t). 6.34 (1H, br s). 91 (1H, m). 7.02-7.33	C <sub>11</sub> 11 <sub>11</sub> N <sub>1</sub> 0-7/511 <sub>1</sub> 0 73.26 7.25 (73.52 7.55	9. 89)
9- <b>41</b>	-NHCONB OCH,	Ė	<b>.</b>		ເ ຕ	153-155		C2.7H3,1N3O2 75. 25 7. 27 (75. 49 7. 27	9. 48 9. 78)
17-71		<b>=</b>	ច់	0	ო ო	168-172	6.71-6.77 (1H, m), 6.86-6.96 (2H, m), 7.03-7.31 (9H, m) 1.20-1.62 (2H, m), 2.13-2.30 (2H, C <sub>1.0</sub> H <sub>1.8</sub> M <sub>2</sub> -3HC1 m), 2.35 (3H, s), 2.38 (2H, t), 65.32 7.6 2.54 (4H, t), 2.72 (2H, s), 3.18 (65.11 7.1 (4H t), 3.63 (2H, d), 6.8h-7.00	C1.8H.8N.>3HC1 65.32 7.68 (65.11 7.16	7.73
2	-{\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	æ	<b>.</b>	0	ო ო	139-140	7. 02 - 7. 31 (10H, m) 60 (2H, m). 2. 10-2. 30 7. 2. 35 (3H, s). 2. 38 (2H, s). 3 (4H, t). 2. 72 (2H, s). H, t). 3. 62 (2H, d). 6. 80- H, m). 7. 05-7. 30 (9H, m).	C <sub>2.9</sub> H <sub>3.7</sub> FH <sub>3.7</sub> 3IIC1.2II <sub>3.0</sub> 59.37 7.09 7.3 (59.14 7.02 7.1	льо 7. 39 7. 13)

5		A Analysis	C21H15C1N,O2-HC1-3/10H20 66.91 6.00 5.43		C, 111, 121H, 2HC1 -7/1011,0	7. 29 6. 34	•	$\dot{\Xi}$	6.65 5.40 6.65 5.40)	•		.311C1-1/5H <sub>2</sub> 0	•		211C1-7/5H,0	7.73 5.46	7. 20 5. 03)	
10		Elemental Anal	C2.11.5C1N,		CIBILICIN	57.38			63. 22 (63. 28 6			Cs , IIs , CIN			C, olls CIN + 2IIC1 - 7/5H to		(64. 67 7	
15		(*100)	s), 2.03-2.37 (211, s), 2.66 (211, s).	3.65 (211, t), 6.84. 7.01-7.23 (711, m).	E) D), 1.50 (211,	<b>€</b>	s). 6.88		s), 2.70 (211, q), 3.64 (211, q), 4,53	(III, br s), 6.69	82-6.89 (1H, m).	a), 2.05-2.34 (2H,	2. 69 (2H, s), 3. 18	21, s), 6.82			<b>☆</b>	s), 2.97 (2H, d), 6.90-6.98 (1H, m),
20		NKR (i.e.	1. 43-1. 83 (2H,	57 (2H, s.). 92 (3H, s.).	7. 67-7. 85 (411. 1. 20-1. 55 (211.	br s), 2.00-2.	3. 61 (2H,		a), 2, 34 (3H, 3, 3, 44 (2H, 9), 3	(2H, s), 4.87 (1H,	(1H, br t), 6.82-6.89 (1H, 7.06-7.53 (11H, m)	1. 30-1. 63 (211,	<u></u>	•	-1.63	89-2. 24	<u>5</u>	a), 2.70 (2H, 1 3.61 (2H, 8), (
25		Melting Point (°C)	176-181		184-190			147-152		•		176-182	•		172-177			,
30		<b>*</b>	 	3	e 6	<b>5</b>		3 1	<b>;</b>					•	3			.• •.
35	:	R' · Ar	<b>.</b>	$\geqslant$	<b>5</b>	<b>)</b>		£		·		(C)	)					
40		Če	=		æ			=				=			. ==	:		
45	a 37	às e	04		, S				-HICO -									
50	Table 37	Example	6-AI		17-10		•	17-11			٠	IV-12			17-13	}		
<del></del>																		

7. 03-7. 34 C12H.

San alder a Mandallia

	Elemental Analysis )]	C1.11.1C1.FN4.3IIC1.11.0 54.31 6.12 6.33 (54.52 6.12 6.38)	C <sub>32</sub> H <sub>41</sub> N <sub>3</sub> ·3HC1·5/2N 62.00 7.79 6.77 (61.88 7.79 7.20)	20-2нс 7.50	(67.33 7.40 5.41) C3.H3.FN3.O-2HCI-3/2H3.O 63.37 6.85 7.40	(63.04 6.88 .7.35) Carillage City, 0.2HC1 60.13 5.58 5.85 (59.89 5.31 5.99)
	NWR (3,se. CDC1s)	1.30-1.60 (211, m), 2.15 (24, m), 2.33 (34, s), 2.37 (211, t), 2.53 (44, t), 2.66 (211, s), 3.10 (41, t), 3.57 (211, s), 6.80-7.30 (1111,	Noncrystal- 0.84 (3H, t), 1.30-1.60 (4H, m), C <sub>32</sub> H <sub>41</sub> N <sub>3</sub> ·3HCl·5/2N line powder 2.00-2.50 (14H, m), 2.71(2H, s), 62.00 7.79 6.77 3.49 (1H, s), 3.65 (2H, q), 6.70- (61.88 7.79 7.20)		(81, m), 6.90-7.30 (141, m). 1.60-1.80 (21, d), 2.06 (31, s), 2.30 (31, t), 3.00-3.80 (101,	m). 3.94 (IM, d), 4.08 (IM, d), (63.04 6.88 .7, 4.44 (IM, d), 4.77 (IM, d), 6.9-7.4 (IM, d). 7.4(13M, d). 1.20-1.60 (2M, m). 1.94-2.32 (2M, Ca, M, BrClM, 0-2HClm). 2.35 (2M, t), 2.51 (4M, t), 60.13 5.58 5.3.16 (4M, t), (59.89 5.31 5.4.47-4.74 (IM, m), 4.98-5.17 (IM,
	Melting Point (°C)	163-168	Noncrystal- line powder	2 Noncrystal- line powder	118-120	142-146
	×	ස ය	ო ო	8	8	
•	ĄΓ	15 (O)	0	0	0	[ <b>(</b>
	è	7-c1 CH,	d.	뗦	γc	\$
	В	7-CI	<b>t:</b>		<b>1</b> 23	.8 _
Table 38	ple F'	# OF	- John		100°F	© 
Tal	Example	<b>V</b> [-4]	1Y-15	IY-16	17-17	14-18

25

œ
ന
æ
ユ
<u>۾</u>
ũ

Tr-14		g NWR (3.00. CDCl.) Elemental Analysis )]	1. 30-1. 60 (211, a), 2. 15 (2H, a), C <sub>2.</sub>   1 <sub>3.5</sub> Cl <sub>3.</sub>   N <sub>4.5.</sub> 3  Cl <sub>3.</sub>   N <sub>4.5.</sub>   C <sub>3.3</sub> (3H, a), 2. 37 (2H, t), 2. 53 54. 31 6. 12 6. 38 (4H, t), 2. 66 (2H, s), 3. 10 (4H, (54. 52 6. 12 6. 38) t), 3. 57 (2H, s), 6. 80-7. 30 (1111,	3 3 Noncrystal D. 84 (3H, t), I. 30-1.60 (4H, m), C <sub>32</sub> H <sub>41</sub> N <sub>3</sub> ·3HCI·5/2H <sub>2</sub> O ine powder 2.00-2.50 (14H, m), 2.71(2H, s), 62.00 7.79 6.77 3.49 (1H, s), 3.65 (2H, q), 6.70- (6I. 88 7.79 7.20)	(14II, m). (14II, m). 2.10-2.40 $C_{29H_{34}N_2}O \cdot 2HC1 \cdot H_2O$ der 8II, m), 2.75 (2II, s), 3.50-3.80 67.14 7.50 5.25	(811, m), 6.90-7.30 (1411, m). (67.33 7.40 1.60-1.80 (211, d), 2.06 (311, s), C <sub>3</sub> + 1 <sub>3</sub> + F H <sub>3</sub> O - 2 H C I C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	4.4 (1H, d), 4.77 (1H, d), 6.9- 7.4(13H, d). 7.4(13H, d). 8. 1.20-1.60 (2H, m), 1.94-2.32 (2H, C <sub>3.4</sub> H <sub>3.8</sub> BrClM <sub>3</sub> 0-2HCl m), 2.35 (2H, t), 2.51 (4H, t), 60.13 5.58 5.85 3.16 (4H, t), 3.58-3.94 (2H, m), (59.89 5.31 5.99) 4.47-4.74 (1H, m), 4.98-5.17 (1H,
LO H Pr O CI  B H Bn O  CO FF H Ac O  CO FF	Melting Point (°C)	163-168	Noncrystal- 0. line powder 2.	(1) Noncrystal- 1. line powder gg	(8 118-120 1. 2.	142-146 1. 3.	
2)-F 7-C1 GH, LO H "Pr. D)-F H Bn		×		<u>ო</u>	3 2 1	ო · ·	
10 H Bn Pr		. <b>۷</b> د	0	0	0	0	[ 0
	1	×	5	<b>.</b>	8		
IV-15 -K CO-F  IV-15 -K CO-F  IV-16 -C  IV-18 -K CO-F		<u>.</u>			<b>=</b>		.¥ <u>.</u>
Exami 1V-14 1Y-17 1Y-17		le F'	7 (O) 12	-i Jioh()	<b>\tilde{\</b>	Y	
•		Examp	11-14	17-15	IY-16	IV-17	14-18

	Molting NRK (1,,,, UCL1,) Siemental Antaly Found (Found Celcule) C A M	189-192 1.30-1.59 (2H, m), 2.12 (3H, s), Casilian 10-HCl 2.21 (2H, t), 2.35 (2H, t), 3.42 75.17 6.98	(211, s), 3.61 (111, d), 4.06 (111, (75.34 d), 4.59 (211, q), 5.80 (111,		144-147 1.30-1.60 (2H, m), 2.24 (2H, t), C301130FN4.03-11C. 2.38 (2H, t), 2.51 (4H, m), 3.08 67.44 6.49		ت ۔	211, t), 2.50-2.60 (711, m), 2.89 111, m), 3.59 (211, s), 4.36 (111,
]	×	3 1 1			3 1 1/		3 1 Non	9 5
	γĽ	0	)	<u>.</u>	0	:	(0)	
i	. X	H-CONH(O)	)	-CONH(O)	) =		II SO <sub>2</sub> Me	
	· be	(O) F(C) F(C)	5	· (	4 350 FE		(0)	
Table 39	Exemple	IY-19			IV-20 -X		IV-21	

Example R	o≃	o Ge	γĽ	æ	×	eld (\$)	X (\$) Malting Yield Point (*C)	NAR (8,,m, in CRCls)	Elemental Analysis [Found/(Calculated)]
1-22 2-2-3-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-40-4-40 3-	<u>۔</u> گ	• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ڙ ۞	4	١,	55	55 Noncrystal- line powder	1.04-j.33 (2H, m), 1.35-l.55 (2H, m), 2.02, 2.28, (2H exch, t), 2.28 (3H, s), 2.40 (6H, s) 9.54	C H N C35H4FNJ02S-6/5H20 70 24 6 03 6 47
)	•	人。	<b>.</b>	•				3.10 (4H cach, t), 3.45, 4.44 (2H cach, q), 6.79-	(70.49 7.22 6.49)
1-23 	* '	. O. Ye	0	m	_	83	123-128	1.25-1.62 (2H, m), 1.98-2.21 (2H, m), 2.35 (2H, t), C, H, FCIN,O, HCI-3/2H,O 2.51, 3.09 (4H each, t), 3.56-3.77 (4H, m), 3.83- 61.53 6.21 7.30	C,H, FCIN, 0, -1KI -3/211,0 61, 53 6, 21 7, 30
•		•	)	•			. •	4.11 (1H, m), 4.28-4.73 (2H, m), 6.81-7.00 (4H, m), (61.54 6.37 7.7.01-7.30 (8H m)	(61.54 6.37 7.18)
F-24 S	<b>=</b> (	€	0	က		65	65 Noncrystal- line powder	1.38-1.76 (2H, m), 2.04-2.37 (2H, m), 2.31 (3H, s),	C24H29N3S-H20
O- NHCNH -O	<b></b>		Ì		•		<b>)•</b>	2. 68 (2H, s), 3. 48-3. 63 (4H, m), 6. 01 (1H, br s),	71.91 7.02 9.53
								0.09 'In, dd/, /. UU-f. 45 (13M, m), 7.83 (1M, br s)	(72.02 7.2) 9.69)

#### Formulation Example 1

(1)	Compound of Example I-45	10.0 g
(2)	Lactose	60.0 g
(3)	Corn starch	35.0 g
(4)	Gelatin	3.0 g
(5)	Magnesium stearate	2.0 g

Using 30 ml of an aqueous solution of gelatin (10% by weight, 3.0 g as gelatin), a mixture of 10.0 g of the compound obtained in Example I-45, 60.0 g of lactose and 35.0 g of corn starch was granulated through a 1 mm-mesh sieve, dried at 40°C, and resieved. To the granulation thus obtained was added 2.0 g of magnesium stearate and the mixture was compressed. The core tablets thus prepared were coated with a coating composition comprising an aqueous suspension of sucrose, titanium dioxide, talc and gum arabic and, then, grazed with beeswax to provide 1000 coated tablets.

#### Formulation Example 2

(1)	Compound of Example I-45	10.0 g
(2)	Lactose	70.0 g
(3)	Corn starch	50.0 g
(4)	Soluble starch	7.0 g
(5)	Magnesium stearate	3.0 g

Using 70 ml of an aqueous solution of soluble starch (7.0 g as soluble starch), a mixture of 10.0 g of the compound obtained in Example 1-45 and 3.0 g of magnesium stearate was granulated. The granulation was dried and mixed with 70.0 g of lactose and 50.0 g of corn starch. The resulting composition was compressed to provide 1000 tablets.

#### Formulation Example 3

	(1) Compound of Example I-36	10.0 g
_	(2) Lactose	60.0 g
O	(3) Corn starch	35.0 g
	(4) Gelatin	3.0 g
	(5) Magnesium stearate	2.0 g

A mixture of 10.0 g of the compound obtained in Example I-36, 60.0 g of lactose and 35.0 g of corn starch was passed through a 1 mm mesh sieve and granulated with 30 ml of 10 wt. % aqueous gelatin solution (3.0 g as gelatin) and the granulation was dried at 40°C and re-sieved. The granules thus prepared were mixed with 2.0 g of magnesium stearate and the mixture was compressed. The resulting core tablets were coated with an aqueous suspension containing sucrose, titanium dioxide, talc and gum arabic. The coated tablets were then grazed with beeswax to provide 1000 tablets.

#### Formulation Example 4

 (1)
 Comp und of Example I-36
 10.0 g

 (2)
 Lactos
 70.0 g

 (3)
 Corn starch
 50.0 g

 (4)
 Soluble starch
 7.0 g

 (5)
 Magnesium stearate
 3.0 g

A mixture of 10.0 g of the compound obtained in Example I-36 and 3.0 g of magnesium stearate was granulated with 70 ml of an aqueous solution of soluble starch (7.0 g as soluble starch) and the granulation was dried and mixed with 70.0 g of lactose and 50.0 g of corn starch. This mixture was compressed to provide 1000 tablets

#### **Experimental Example 1**

#### (A) Preparation of 1251-leuprolerin

10

20

Ten (10)  $\mu$ l of 3 x 10<sup>4</sup> M aquaous leuprolerin solution and 10  $\mu$ l of 0.01 mg/ml lactoperoxidase were taken in a tube and 10  $\mu$ l of Na<sup>125</sup>I solution (37 MBq) was added. After stirring, 10  $\mu$ l of 0.001% H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> was added and the reaction was conducted at room temperature for 20 minutes. Then, 700  $\mu$ l of 0.05% TFA solution was added to the tube to terminate the reaction and the reaction mixture was purified by reverse-phase HPLC. The HPLC conditions are shown below. <sup>125</sup>I-leuprolerin was eluted after a retention time of 26 - 27 minutes.

Column: TSKgel ODS-80T<sub>M</sub>CTR (4.6 mm x 10 cm)

Eluent: Solvent A (0.05% TFA)

Solvent B (40% CH<sub>3</sub>CN-0.05% TFA)

Min. 0 (100% Solvent A) - Min. 3 (100% Solvent A) - Min. 7 (50% Solvent A + 50% Solvent B) -

30 Min. 40 (100% Solvent B)

Elution temperature: room temperature

Elution speed: 1 ml/min.

(B) Preparation of a rat pituitary anterior lobe membrane

fraction containing GnRH receptors

Forty Wistar rats (8 weeks old, male) were sacrificed by decapitation under no anesthesia and the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland was isolated and washed with ice-cooled homogenate buffer [25 mM Tris (tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane)-HCl, 0.3 M sucrose, 1 mM EGTA(glycoletherdiamine-N,N,N',N'-tetraacetic acid), 0.25 mM PMSF (phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride), 10 U/ml aprotinin, 1 µg/ml pepstatin, 20 µg/ml leupeptin, 100 µg/ml phosphoramidon, 0.03% sodium azide, pH 7.5]. The pituitary tissue was floated in 2 ml of the homogenate buffer and homogenized using a Polytron homogenizer. The homogenate was centrifuged at 700 x G for 15 minutes. The supernatant was taken in an ultracentrifuge tube and centrifuged at 100,000 x G for 1 hour to provide a membrane fraction pellet. This pellet was suspended in 2 ml of assay buffer [25 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid), 0.1% BSA (bovine serum albumin), 0.25 mM PMSP, 1 µg/ml pepstatin, 20 µg/ml leupeptin, 100 µg/ml phosphoramidon, 0.03% sodium azide, pH 7.5) and the suspension was centrifuged at 100,000 x G for 1 hour. The membrane fraction recovered as a pellet was resuspended in 10 ml of assay buffer, divided into portions, preserved at -80°C and thawed when needed.

(C) Preparation of a bovine pituitary anterior lobe membrane fraction containing GnRH receptors

A bovine pituitary anterior lobe membrane fraction containing GnRH receptors was prepared by the same procedure as described under (B). However, a 10,000 x G centrifugation supernatant was recentrifuged at 100,000 x G for 1 hour to provide the membrane fraction pellet.

#### (D) Preparation fa CHO (Chin s hamster varian) cell

m mbran fracti n c ntaining human GnRH receptors

A CHO cell line (10° cells) with human GnRH receptors—xpressed was suspended in 5 mM EDTA-supplemented phosphate-buffered physiological saline (PBS-EDTA) and centrifuge d at 100 x G for 5 minutes. To the cell pellet was added 10 ml of cell homogenate buffer (10 mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, 5 mM EDTA, pH 7.5) and th mixture was homogenized using a Polytron homogenizer. The homogenate was centrifuged at 400 x G for 15 minutes. The supernatant was taken in an ultracentrifuge tube and centrifuged at 100,000 x G for 1 hour to provide a membrane fraction pellet. This pellet was suspended in 2 ml of assay buffer and centrifuged at 100,000 x G for 1 hour. The membrane fraction recovered as a pellet was resuspended in 20 ml of assay buffer, divided into portions, preserved at - 80°C and thawed when needed.

# (E) Determination of the <sup>126</sup>l-leuprolerin binding inhibition rate

For the rat and human membrane fractions prepared in (B) and (D), each membrane fraction was diluted with assay buffer to a concentration of 200 μg/ml and distributed in 188 μl portions into tubes. As to the bovin membrane fraction prepared in (C), the membrane fraction was diluted with assay buffer to 750 μg/ml and distributed in 188 μl portions into tubes. Where the rat pituitary anterior lobe membrane fraction was used, 2 μl of a 0.1 mM solution of the compound in 60% DMSO (dimethyl sulfoxide) and 10 μl of 38 nM ½ leuprolerin solution were simultaneously added. Where the bovine pituitary anterior lobe fraction or the cell membran fraction of the CHO with human GnRH receptors expressed, 2 μl of a 2 mM solution of the compound in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM ½ leuprolerin solution were simultaneously added. For determining the maximum binding amount, a reaction system comprising 2 μl of 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM ½ leuprolerin solution was prepared. On the other hand, for determining the nonspecific binding amount, a reaction system comprising 2 μl of 100 μM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM ½ leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DMSO and 10 μl of 38 nM leuprolerin in 60% DM

Where the rat or bovine pituitary anterior lobe membrane fraction was used, the reaction was conducted at 4°C for 90 minutes. Where the membrane fraction of the CHO with human GnRH receptors expressed was used, the reaction was carried out at 25°C for 60 minutes. After each reaction, the reaction mixture was filtered under suction through a polyethylenelmine-treated Whatman glass filter (GF-F). After filtration, the radioactivity of  $^{125}$ -leuprolerin remaining on the filter was measured with a  $\gamma$ -counter.

The expression (TB-SB)/(TB-NSB)  $\times$  100 (where SB = radioactivity with the compound added, TB = maximum bound radioactivity, NSB = nonspecifically bound radioactivity) was calculated to find the binding inhibition rate of each test compound. Furthermore, the inhibition rate was determined by varying the concentration of the test substance and the 50% inhibitory concentration (IC<sub>50</sub>) of the compound was calculated from Hill plot. The results are shown in Table 41.

# °1995 DERWENT INFORMATION LTD

#### EP 0 679 642 A1

Tabl 41

•	GnRH r ceptor binding inhibition	n test		
5	Example No. of compound	Bind	ing inhibitory activity (IC	C <sub>50</sub> μM)
		Human	Rat	Bovine
	I-24	•	0.9	7
)	I-35	• . •	0.7	6
	I-36	0	0.6	11
	1-37	-	0.03	6
i	I-45	6	0.5	5
	I-46	-	0.5	14
	1-47	•	0.3	7
	1-48	•	0.4	10
	1-49	•	0.5	10
	1-50	-	0.08	8
	I-51	•	0.5	10
	I-52	6	0.03	5

It is apparent from Table 41 that the compound (I) or salt of this invention has excellent GnRH receptor binding inhibitory activity.

# Experimental Example 2

15

20

25

35

Assay of monoamine uptake-antagonizing activity

# (a) Activity to inhibit serotonine (5-HT) uptake

The experiment was performed in accordance with the method of Hyttel et al. [Psychopharmacology <u>60</u>, 13, 1978]. The whole brain of a rat was homogenized in 40 volumes of ice-cooled 0.32 M sucrose solution containing 10 µM pargyline and, then, centrifuged (600 x G) for 10 minutes. The supernatant was centrifuged (2500 x G) for 55 minutes to provide a pellet. This pellet was suspended in Krebs-Ringer-phosphate buffer (pH 7.4; 122 mM NaCl, 4.82 mM KCl, 0.972 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub>, 1.21 mM MgSO<sub>4</sub>, 12.7 mM Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>, 2.97 mM NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, 0.162 mM EDTA sodium, 10 mM glucose, 1.14 mM ascorbic acid) saturated with a mixed gas (95% O and 5% CO<sub>2</sub>). To 900 µl of this suspention was added a solution of the test drug (10 µl) in DMSO and the mixture was incubated at 37°C for 5 minutes. Then, 100 µl of <sup>3</sup>H-5-HT (final concentration 10 nM) was added and the mixture was further incubated at 37°C for 5 minutes. This reaction mixture was filtered under suction using a GF/B filter and the filter was washed with 4 ml of the above-mentioned buffer. The radioactivity on the filter was measured by the liquid scintillation method.

The amount of the drug which caused a 50% decrease in 5-HT uptake is shown as 50% inhibitory activity ( $IC_{50}$ ) in Table 42.

# \$1995 DERWENT INFORMATION LTD

#### EP 0 679 642 A1

Table 42

	Example No. of Compound	5-HT uptake inh	ibitory activity (IC <sub>50</sub> μM)
5	1-6	1.0	
	I-12	0.022	
	I-18	0.8	
10	I-24	0.26	
	1-25	0.14	
	1-30	0.068	
15	1-33	0.27	
•	1-35	0.13	
	I-36	0.0051	•
0	11-7	0.88	
	11-8	0.41	
	II-13	0.14	
5	111-7	0.2	i
	III-8	0.16	
	III-9	0.17	
9	IV-7	0.18	
j	IV-13	0.13	
	IV-19	0.23	
5	IV-20	0.03	

It is apparent from Table 42 that the compound (I) or salt of this invention has excellent serotonine uptake antagonizing activity.

# (b) Activity to inhibit norepinephrine (NE) uptake

35

Using the rat cerebral cortex and, as the substrate, <sup>3</sup>H-NE, an experiment was performed by otherwise the same procedure as described for 5-HT. See Table 43.

# \$1995 DERWENT INFORMATION FIED

#### EP 0 679 642 A1

Table 44

	Example No. of Compound	<sup>45</sup> Ca <sup>2+</sup> uptak inhibitory activity (IC <sub>60</sub> μM)
5	I-6	0.32
	I-12	0.85
	I-15	1.25
10	I-18	1.32
10	I-19	1.05
	1-20	0.94
	I-23	0.50
15	1-24	1.77
	I-25	1.19
	1-30	1.59
20	1-33	0.69
	I-35	0.14
	1-36	0.76
25	11-7	0.46
	II-8	1.84
	II-13	1.29
30	. 111-7	1.77
•	111-8	1.63
	111-9	1.44
	IV-7	1.71
35	IV-13	0.32
	IV-19	0.95
	IV-20	0.17

It is apparent from Table 44 that the objective compound (I) or salt of this invention has excellent carcium ion uptake antagonizing activity.

#### s Claims

### 1. A compound of the formula

$$\begin{array}{c}
Ar (CH_2)m - N < R^1 \\
(CH_2)n
\end{array}$$
(I)

wherein ring A represents a benzene ring which may b substituted,

Ar repr sents an aromatic group which may be substituted;

R¹ and R² independently represent hydrogen atom, acyl group or hydrocarbon group which may be substituted or R¹ and R² taken together with the adjacent nitrog in atom represent a nitrog in-containing

heterocyclic group,

10

25

45

55

m represents an integer f1t 6,

n represents an integer of 1 to 3;

---- represents a single bond or a double bond.

X is -O- or -NR3- in which !33 represents hydrogen atom, acyl group or hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, where \_\_\_\_ is a single bond, or X is =N- where \_\_\_\_ is a double bond, or a salt there f.

- 2. A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein ring A is a benzene ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino.
- 3. A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein Ar is (i) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or (ii) 5- or 6-membered heteroaromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-3</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acytamino.
- 4. A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein the hydrocarbon group which may be substituted is a C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-8</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-8</sub> alkinyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl group which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino.
- 5. A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein the nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group is
  (i) a 5- or 6-membered nitrogen-containing hetero-aromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino, (ii)



wherein ring B may be substituted by two oxo groups and may be fused to one benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the groups consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino; p represents an integer of 4 to 7, (iii)



wherein Z represents -O-, >CH-W or >N-W in which W represents (a) hydrogen atom or (b) a  $C_{6-14}$  arylor  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl group, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamin , carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamin , or (iv)

wherein ring D represents (a) a benzene ring or (b) 5-or 6-membered heteroaromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C1-8 alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-8}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-8}$  alkylthic which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo,  $hydroxy, amino, mono(C_{1-6}) \\ alkylamino, di(C_{1-6}) \\ alkylamino, carboxy, C_{1-6} \\ alkoxy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-7} \\ acy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-7} \\ acy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-8} \\ alkoxy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-8} \\ alkoxy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-8} \\ alkylamino, carboxy, C_{1-6} \\ alkoxy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-7} \\ acy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-8} \\ alkoxy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-8} \\ alkoxy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-8} \\ alkylamino, carboxy, C_{1-8} \\ alkoxy-carbonyl \\ and C_{1-8} \\ alkylamino, carboxy, C_{1-8} \\ a$ lamino,

Y represents -CH2-, -CO- or -CH(OH)-; s and t each represents an integer of 1 to 3.

A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein Ar represents a phenyl group which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthic which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo,

hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkyiamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino. 25

A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein R1 represents hydrogen atom and R2 represents a C7-16 aralkyl which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthic which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, suffo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino.

35

30

A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein R¹ and R² taken together with the adjacent nitrogen atom

wherein ring Da represents a benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthic which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino,  $mono(C_{1-6}) alkylamino, \ di(C_{1-6}) alkylamino, \ carboxy, \ C_{1-6} \ alkoxy-carbonyl \ and \ C_{1-7} \ acylamino, \ Y^{\bullet} \ representation of the control of the co$ sents -CH2- or -CO-.

50

A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein \_\_\_\_ represents a single bond and X represents -O-.

10. A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein \_\_\_\_ represents a single bond and X represents -NR34- in which R3e represents hydrogen atom or C1-6 alkyl group.

55

11. A process for producing the compound of claim 1, wherein X is -O- or a sait thereof, which comprises reacting a compound of the firmula

# ©1995 DERWENT INFORMATION LTD

#### EP 0 679 642 A1

$$\begin{array}{c}
Ar \\
(CH_2)m-L \\
(CH_2)n
\end{array}$$

wherein L represents a leaving group and the other symbols are as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof, with a compound of the formula

$$NH < \frac{R^1}{R^2}$$

wherein the symbols are as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof.

10

20

25

30

12. A process for producing the compound of claim 1, wherein X is -NR3- or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound of the formula

$$(CH_2)m-N < R^1$$

$$(CH_2)n-N-CHO$$

$$R^3$$

wherein all the symbols are as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof, to cyclization.

- 13. A gonadotropin-releasing hormone antagonistic composition which comprises an effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 1, or a salt thereof and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, excipient or diluent.
- 35 14. A composition as claimed in claim 13, which is a composition for preventing or treating a sex hormone-dependent disease.
  - 15. A composition as claimed in claim 14, wherein the sex hormone-dependent disease is prostatic cancer, uterus cancer, breast cancer or pituitary tumor.
  - 16. A composition as claimed in claim 14, wherein the sex hormone-dependent disease is prostatic hyper-trophy, endometriosis, hysterornyoma or precoclous puberty.
  - 17. A pregnancy controlling composition which comprises an effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 1, or a salt thereof and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, excipient or diluent.
    - 18. A composition as claimed in claim 17, for contraception.
- 19. A menstrual cycle controlling composition which comprises an effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 1, or a salt thereof and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, excipient or diluent.
- 20. A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein ring A is a benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkoxy which may b halogenated, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, hydroxy, amin, mono(C<sub>1-8</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-8</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino and methylenedioxy.

- 21. A compound as claimed in claim 1, whirein the hydrocarbon group which may be substituted is a C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-8</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-8</sub> alkinyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or C<sub>7-18</sub> aralkyl group which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-8</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-8</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino, oxo, thioxo, phenyl, phenylamino, phenyloxy and methylenedioxyphenyloxy.
- 22. A compound as claimed in claim 1, wherein the nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group is (i) a 5- or 6-membered nitrogen-containing hetero-aromatic group having 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono(C<sub>1-6</sub>)alkylamino, di(C<sub>1-8</sub>)alkylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl and C<sub>1-7</sub> acylamino, (ii)

$$-N$$
 $(CH_2)p$ 
 $B$ 

10

25

30

35

55

wherein ring B may be substituted by 1 or 2 oxo groups and may be fused to one benzene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, p represents an integer of 4 to 7, (iii)

$$-N$$

wherein Z represents -O-, >CH-W or >N-W in which W represents (a) hydrogen atom, (b) a  $C_{6-14}$  arylor  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl group, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino or (c) a heterocyclic group which (iv)

wherein ring D represens (a) a benzene ring or (b) a 5- or 6-membered heteroaromatic group and ring 1 to 3 hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alk xy which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, amino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamin , carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino,

Y represents -CH2-, -CO- or -CH(OH)-,

# ©1995 DERWENT INFORMATION LTD

#### EP 0 679 642 A1

s and t each represents an integer of 1 to 3, or

(v)

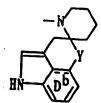
10

15

30

35

55



wherein ring Db represents a berizene ring which may be substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atom,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be halogenated,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio which may be halogenated, nitro, cyano, sulfo, hydroxy, emino, mono( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, di( $C_{1-6}$ )alkylamino, carboxyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxycarbonyl and  $C_{1-7}$  acylamino, Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CO- or -CH(OH)-.

- 23. Use of a compound as claimed in claim 1, for manufacturing a pharmaceutical composition for an agonizing a gonadotropin-releasing hormone.
  - 24. Use of a compound as claimed in claim 1, for manufacturing a pharmaceutical composition for preventing or treating a sex hormone-dependent disease.
- 25. Use as claimed in claim 24, wherein the sex hormone-dependent disease is prostatic cancer, uterus cancer, breast cancer or pituitary tumor.
  - 26. Use as claimed in claim 24, wherein the sex hormone-dependent disease is prostatic hypertrophy, endometriosis, hysteromyoma or precious puberty.
  - 27. Use of a compound as claimed in claim 1, for manufacturing a pharmaceutical composition for controlling a pregnancy.
  - 28. Use as claimed in claim 27, for contraception.
  - 29. Use of a compound as claimed in claim 1, for manufacturing a pharmaceutical composition for control a menstrual cycle.



# **EUPOPEAN SEARCH REPORT**

Application Number EP 95 10 6189

Category	Citation of document with indication of relevant passages	n, where appropriate,	Relevant	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (IM.CL6)
٨	GB-A-1 374 337 (SANDOZ * the whole document *	LTD)	1	C07D217/14 C07D311/76
D,A	US-A-3 553 218 (RICHARD * the whole document *	HUNGER ET AL)	1	A51K31/47 A51K31/35 C07D405/06 C07D401/06 C07D409/12
		·		
1				·
ļ	,			
ı				
İ				
ŀ				SEARCHED (INC.L.S)
- 1				CO7D
l				
ĺ				
ŀ		•		
				l
		·		
			-	
	The present search report has been draw	on up for all claims  Date of couplettee of the argest	<u> </u>	
•	THE HAGUE	17 July 1995	Hen	ry, J
X : partic Y : partic	ATEGORY OF CITED DOCUMENTS  colarly relevant if taken alone usfarly relevant if combined with another ment of the same category	T : theory or prind	ple underlying the locument, but public date in the application	Invention .